

**ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP**

**Engineer Battalion,  
Topographic (TA),  
Battalion Staff**

**JULY 2003**

**DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION:** Approved for public release;  
distribution is unlimited.

**HEADQUARTERS  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

\*ARMY TRAINING AND  
EVALUATION PROGRAM  
No. 5-605-66-MTP

HEADQUARTERS  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
Washington, DC, 28 July 2003

# **MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE ENGINEER BATTALION, TOPOGRAPHIC (TA), BATTALION STAFF**

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<u>PAGE</u>
<b>Table of Contents .....</b>	<b>i</b>
<b>Preface .....</b>	<b>ii</b>
<b>Chapter 1. Unit Training .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
<b>Chapter 2. Training Matrixes.....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
<b>Chapter 3. Mission Outlines/Training Plans.....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
<b>Chapter 4. Training Exercise.....</b>	<b>4-1</b>
<b>Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines .....</b>	<b>5-1</b>
<b>Chapter 6. External Evaluation .....</b>	<b>6-1</b>
<b>Appendix A - Exercise Operation Order .....</b>	<b>A-1</b>
<b>Appendix B - Threat Analysis .....</b>	<b>B-1</b>
<b>Appendix C - Metric Conversion Chart .....</b>	<b>C-1</b>
<b>Glossary .....</b>	<b>Glossary-1</b>
<b>References .....</b>	<b>References-1</b>
<b>Questionnaire .....</b>	<b>Questionnaire-1</b>

---

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

\*This publication supersedes ARTEP 5-605-MTP, dated 15 June 1992.

## PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides active component (AC) and reserve component (RC) training managers with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. This MTP aligns with and is part of the United States (US) Army Training and Tactical Doctrine Program. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are expected to be executed with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in this MTP. Standards for training may be raised, but they may not be lowered.

This MTP applies to the engineer battalion, topographic (theatre Army [TA]) table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) 05605L000.

The proponent for this publication is HQ, TRADOC. Send comments and recommendations on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 directly to Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns refer to both men and women.

**CHAPTER 1**

**Unit Training**

1-1. General. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit training program will depend on the—

- Unit mission-essential task list (METL).
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- Unit training priorities.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

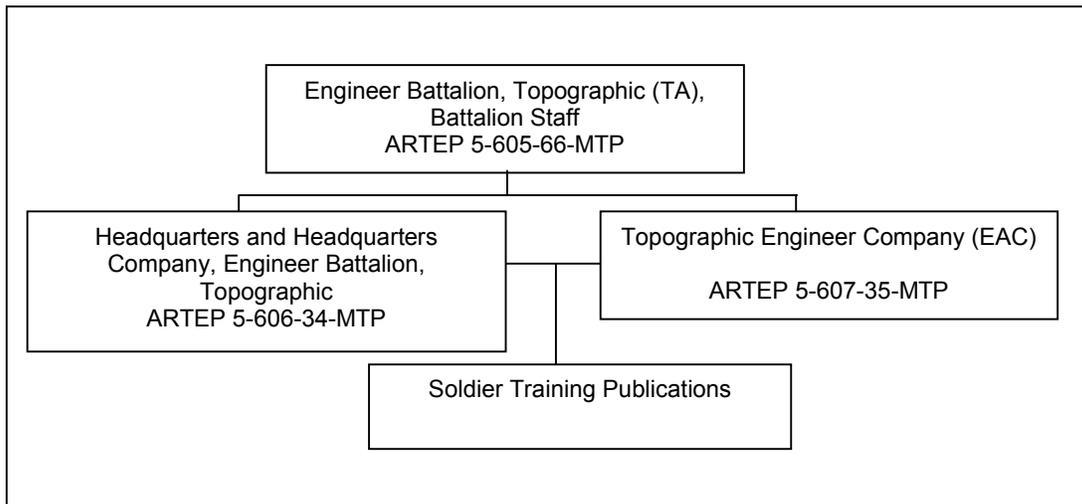
1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher echelon training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit training program consists of the following publications:

a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-605-66-MTP for the engineer battalion, topographic (TA), battalion staff. This MTP indicates the battalion training program.

b. ARTEP 5-606-34-MTP for the headquarters and headquarters company, engineer battalion topographic. This MTP indicates the relationship of the headquarters company training program to the battalion training program.

c. ARTEP 5-607-35-MTP topographic engineer company (echelons above corps [EAC]). This MTP indicates the relationship of the company training program to the battalion training program.

d. Soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialties (MOSS) and skill levels.



**Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship**

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendixes.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the mission and the collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercise, consists of an example field training exercise (FTX). This exercise provides training information and a preconstructed sample scenario. It can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. This exercise may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, contains the T&EOs for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the unit. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) countertasks. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs can be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise. Each T&EO is part of a mission and, in various combinations, composes the training exercise in Chapter 4.

(1) Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

(a) Elements. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.

(b) Task. This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.

(c) Reference. This identifies the publication used to develop the task and is in parenthesis following the task number. If more than one reference is used, the reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, it is not underlined.

(d) Iteration. This is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The M identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

(e) Commander/leader assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit-leader input to develop an assessment of the overall capability of the organization to accomplish the task. Use the ratings listed below.

- **T - Trained.** The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
- **P - Needs practice.** The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
- **U - Untrained.** The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

(f) Conditions. This describes the situation or environment in which the unit is to perform the collective task.

(g) Task standards. This states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and should be understood by every soldier. The trainer or evaluator determines the unit training status by using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

(h) Task steps and performance measures. This is a list of actions that the unit is required to perform to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with any supporting individual tasks and their references. An asterisk (\*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of the task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard. The task step may contain performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step.

(i) GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an X in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

(j) Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the unit demonstrated performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

(k) Supporting individual tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. The task number and task title for each individual task are listed.

(l) Supporting collective tasks. This is a listing of all supporting collective tasks required to correctly perform the task. The task number and task title for each individual task are listed.

(m) Opposing forces tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that the OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or lose to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

(2) Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Sample Operation Order, contains a sample operation order (OPORD) to be used with the exercise in Chapter 4.

h. Appendix B, Threat Analysis, describes local, regional, and global threats and special situations that impact operations.

i. Appendix C, Metric Conversion Chart, shows how to convert US and metric measurements.

#### 1-4. Missions and Tasks.

a. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the TOE and an implied mission that the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical missions are the focus for the

unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for the unit:

- Plan engineer operations.
- Sustain unit operations.
- Provide topographic support to theater element/support engineer topographic companies.
- Defend the unit.
- Conduct unit survivability operations.

b. Each of these tasks may be trained individually or jointly. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the ability of the unit to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

d. Leader tasks that support unit missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of unit missions.

e. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards outlined in the appropriate STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective-task training.

1-5. Training Principles. This MTP is based on the training principles explained in Field Manual (FM) 7-0.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program, developed and executed by the engineer battalion to train to standards in its critical wartime missions, will be a component of the Army Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS). The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS will provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training events and resources required to facilitate training to standard. CATS will be embedded in the Standard Army Training System (SATS), version 4.1 and higher. The Web site for this information is <http://www.atsc.army.mil/atmd/strac>.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive menu for training, reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The unit training strategy is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects those tasks required to train his METL from this MTP. The training strategies to be provided in SATS 4.1 will provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. The unit training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in this MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit training strategy are discussed below.

(1) Maneuver- and collective-training strategy. The maneuver- and collective-training strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FMs.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or units, to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit METL and the commander's assessment of his unit training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective-training exercises in a specific unit training strategy.

e. When developing the unit training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL.

1-7. Training Conduct. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 7-0 and 25-101. The commander performs the following:

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for training based on his METL and guidance from the next higher headquarters (HQ). Trainers must plan and execute training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs and the FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, the command guidance. If they do not support the guidance or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrix in Chapter 2. This matrix provides a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There is never time to train everything. Orient the training toward the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule, using the following procedures:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how to use multiechelon training for the best results.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained and schedules them on the unit training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Keeps subordinate leaders informed, and oversees their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection.

a. **Safety.** Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and risk management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command that is appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win quickly and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines the ability of the unit to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are as follows:

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

(3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.

(4) Standards and procedures for task preferences that are clear and practical.

(5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. **Risk Management.** Risk management addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It helps commanders and leaders identify and predict the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment. Risk management is a five-step, cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5.

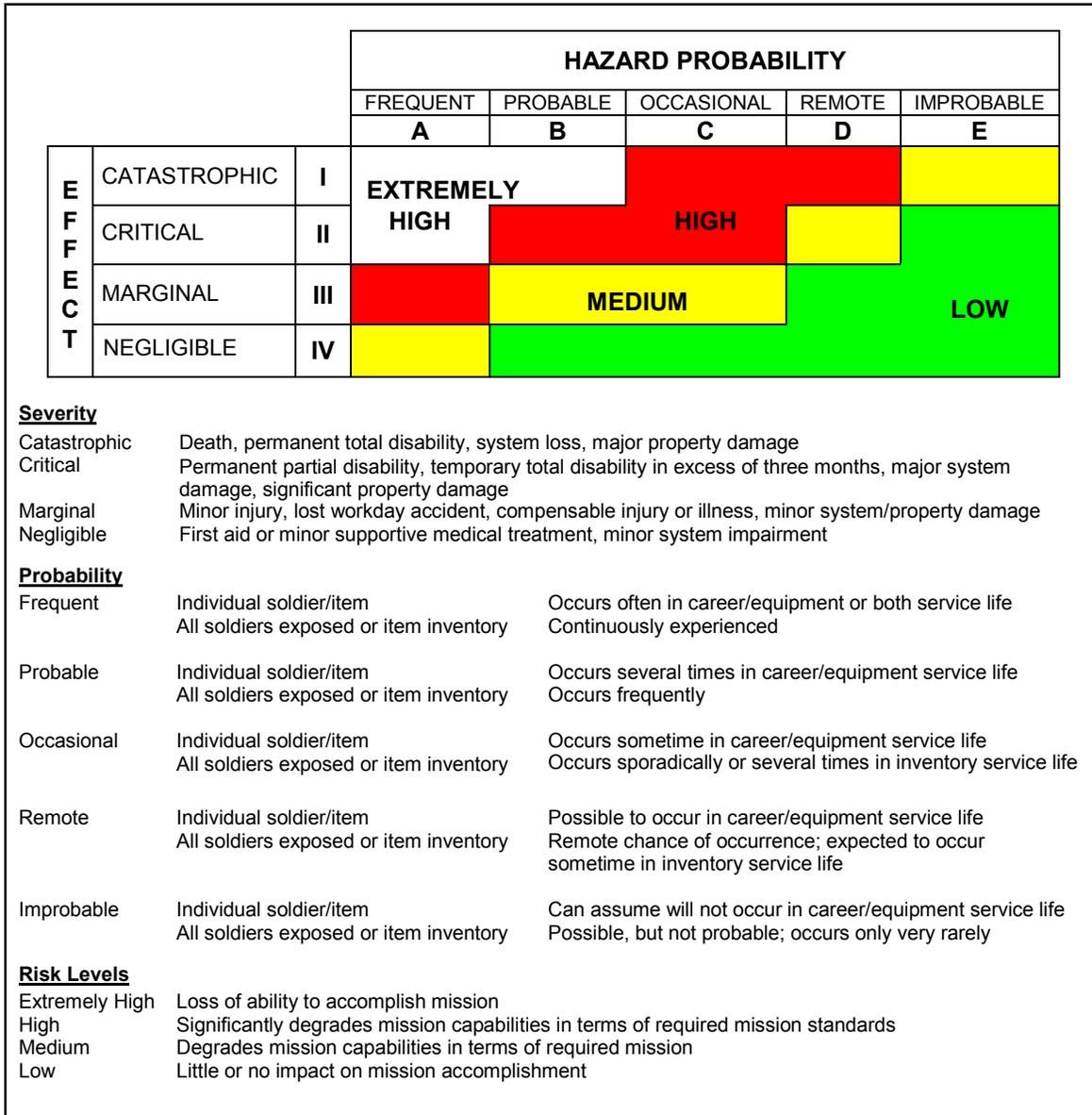
**Step 1.** Identify Any Hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.

**Step 2.** Assess the Hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army standard risk assessment matrix in Figure 1-2 is a tool to use for assessing hazards.

**Step 3.** Make Risk Decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operation. Accept no unnecessary risks, and make any remaining risk decisions at the proper level of command.

**Step 4.** Implement Controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANs), OPORDs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

**Step 5.** Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include a follow-up and an after-action review (AAR). Develop lessons learned.



**Figure 1-2. Risk Assessment Matrix**

c. Chain of Command. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. Responsibilities of the chain of command include—

- (1) Commanders.
  - (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
  - (b) Specify the risk you will accept to accomplish the mission.
  - (c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.
  - (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.

- (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.
- (2) Staff.
  - (a) Assist the commander in assessing risks and developing risk reduction options for training.
  - (b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.
  - (c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
  - (d) Assess safety performance during training.
  - (e) Evaluate safety performance during AARs.
- (3) Subordinate leaders.
  - (a) Apply effective risk management concepts and methods consistently to the operations they lead.
  - (b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.
- (4) Individual soldiers.
  - (a) Report unsafe conditions and acts, and correct the situation when possible.
  - (b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
  - (c) Take responsibility for personal safety.
  - (d) Work as a team member.
  - (e) Modify your own risk behavior.

d. Fratricide. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide prevention is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is, by definition, an accident. Risk assessment and risk management are mechanisms used to control the incidence of fratricide.

- (1) Causes. The primary causes of fratricide are—
  - (a) Direct-fire control plan failures. These failures result when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.
  - (b) Land navigation failures. These failures result when units stray out of sector, report incorrect locations, or become disoriented.
  - (c) Combat identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.

(d) Inadequate control measures. These occur when units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures that are necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(e) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(f) Weapons errors. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(g) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINES), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

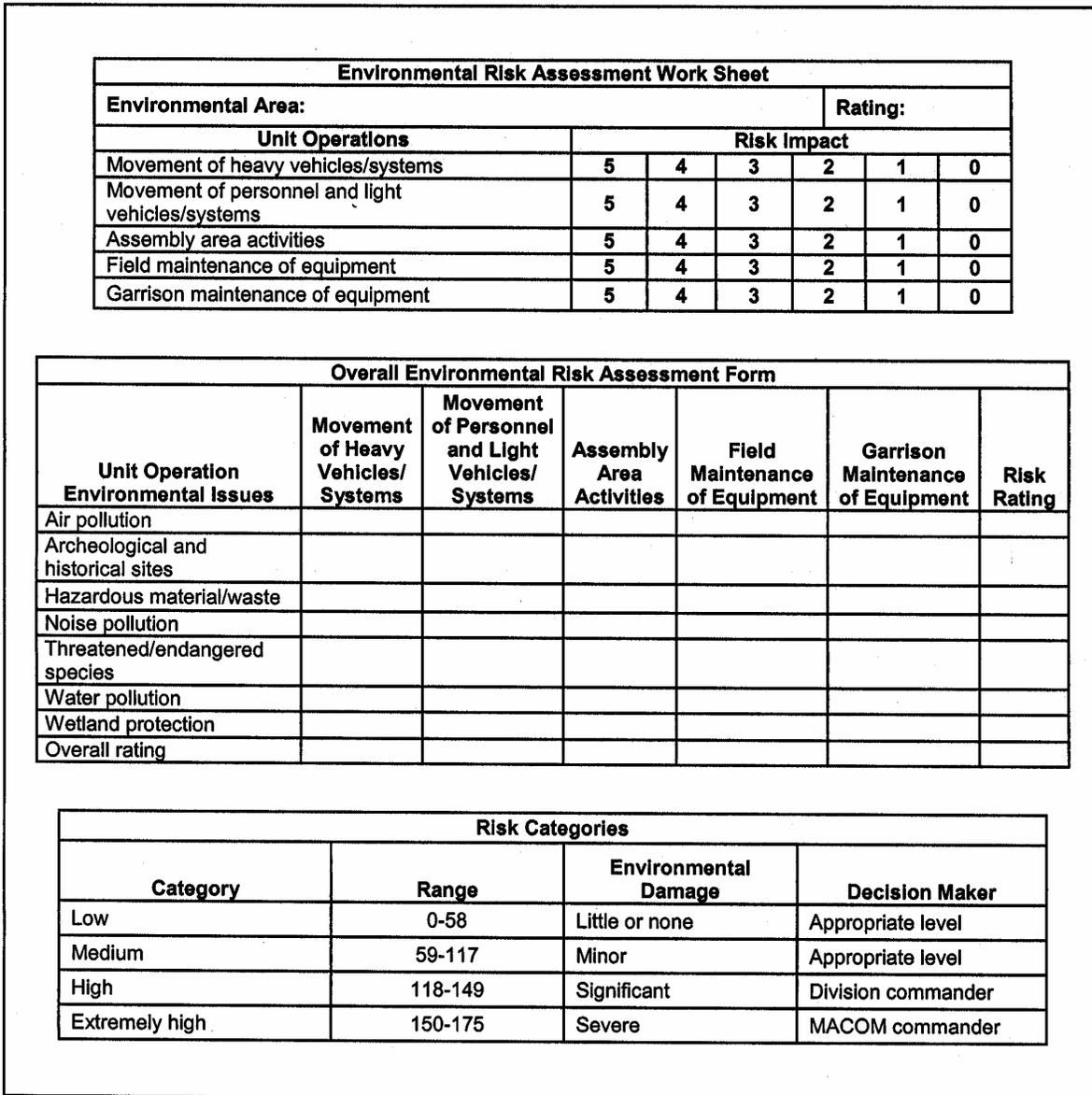
(2) Results. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

- (a) Loss of confidence in unit leadership.
- (b) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.
- (c) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.
- (d) Oversupervision of units.
- (e) Hesitation to conduct night operations.
- (f) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.
- (g) Loss of initiative.
- (h) Disrupted operations.
- (i) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

**Step 1. Identify Any Hazards.** Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during the analysis of METT-TC factors. This requires the identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

**Step 2. Assess the Hazards.** Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-3). Consider the severity of environmental degradation when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrix.



**Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix**

**Step 3.** Make Environmental Risk Decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

**Step 4.** Brief the Chain of Command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

**Step 5.** Implement Controls. Implement environmental-protection measures into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

**Step 6.** Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental-protection standards.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe the standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ that is two levels above the evaluated unit. See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, and then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but evaluations should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that allows the correction of performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please make your comments on DA Form 2028 or the questionnaire provided at the end of this MTP and send to the address reflected in the preface.

**CHAPTER 2**

**Training Matrixes**

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit personnel. The mission identification table listed in Figure 2-1 provides mission identification for the unit.

<b>Mission Identification Table</b> <b>Mission Title</b>
Plan engineer operations Sustain unit operations Provide topographic support to the theater element/support engineer topographic companies Defend the unit Conduct unit survivability operations

**Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table**

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the mission and its supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate battlefield operating system (BOS), indicated by an X in the matrix. The BOSs that are used in this matrix are defined in United States Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) Pamphlet (Pam) 11-9. A specific mission is trained by using the collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Collective Tasks		Plan Engineer Operations	Sustain Operations	Theater Topographic Support	Unit Defense
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>					
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment		<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>
34-1-2005.05-T01A	Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion)		<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>					
05-1-1026	Conduct Deployment Operations	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>
05-2-1385	Establish a Geospatial Operations Site	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire				<b>X</b>
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy		<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>
07-3-0219.05-T01A	Establish Unit Defense		<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>

Collective Tasks		Plan Engineer Operations	Sustain Operations	Theater Topographic Support	Unit Defense
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush		X		X
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically				X
12-1-0409.05-T01A	Prepare Personnel for Deployment		X		
<b>Protect the Force</b>					
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey		X		X
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions				X
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack				X
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack				X
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike				X
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack				X
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area				X
03-3-C209.05-T01A	React to Smoke Operations				X
03-3-C222.05-T01A	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				X
03-3-C223.05-T01A	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				X
03-3-C224.05-T01A	Conduct Operational Decontamination		X		X
03-3-C226.05-T01A	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area		X		X
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack		X		X
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)		X		X
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures	X	X		X

Collective Tasks		Plan Engineer Operations	Sustain Operations	Theater Topographic Support	Unit Defense
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures		X		X
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms		X		X
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>					
05-2-1007	Conduct Administrative Operations		X		
05-4-1373	Maintain a Geospatial Database		X	X	
05-4-1374	Deploy a Geospatial Database		X	X	
05-4-1376	Perform a Geospatial Collection Effort			X	
05-4-1377	Perform Quality Control Measures on Geospatial Products		X	X	
05-4-1378	Perform Production Management on Geospatial Products		X	X	
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	X	X		X
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply		X		
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)		X		
11-5-0101.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel Voice Radio Station (AM)		X	X	X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System		X		
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties		X		
12-1-0404.05-T01A	Perform Strength Accounting		X		

Collective Tasks		Plan Engineer Operations	Sustain Operations	Theater Topographic Support	Unit Defense
12-1-0405.05-T01A	Conduct Replacement Operations		X		
12-1-0406.05-T01A	Process Personnel and Administrative Actions		X		
12-1-0410.05-T01A	Provide Legal Support		X		
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)		X		X
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations		X		X
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>					
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)	X	X		
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)	X	X		
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	X	X		X
05-1-0026	Report Engineer Information	X	X	X	X
05-1-0039	Conduct Base Cluster Operations		X	X	X
05-1-0721	Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X	X	X	X
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures	X	X	X	X
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		X	X	X
05-4-1379	Provide Liaison	X	X	X	X
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net		X		X
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X	X		X
12-1-0408.05-T01A	Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process		X		X

Collective Tasks		Unit Survivability
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>		
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment	<b>X</b>
34-1-2005.05-T01A	Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion)	
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	<b>X</b>
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>		
05-1-1026	Conduct Deployment Operations	<b>X</b>
05-2-1385	Establish a Geospatial Operations Site	
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire	<b>X</b>
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy	<b>X</b>
07-3-0219.05-T01A	Establish Unit Defense	<b>X</b>
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush	<b>X</b>
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically	<b>X</b>
12-1-0409.05-T01A	Prepare Personnel for Deployment	
<b>Protect the Force</b>		
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	<b>X</b>
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions	<b>X</b>
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack	<b>X</b>
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack	<b>X</b>
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	<b>X</b>
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>Unit Survivability</b>
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	<b>X</b>
03-3-C209.05-T01A	React to Smoke Operations	<b>X</b>
03-3-C222.05-T01A	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>
03-3-C223.05-T01A	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>
03-3-C224.05-T01A	Conduct Operational Decontamination	<b>X</b>
03-3-C226.05-T01A	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	<b>X</b>
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	<b>X</b>
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	<b>X</b>
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures	<b>X</b>
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	<b>X</b>
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	<b>X</b>
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures	<b>X</b>
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>		
05-2-1007	Conduct Administrative Operations	
05-4-1373	Maintain a Geospatial Database	
05-4-1374	Deploy a Geospatial Database	
05-4-1376	Perform a Geospatial Collection Effort	
05-4-1377	Perform Quality Control Measures on Geospatial Products	

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>Unit Survivability</b>
05-4-1378	Perform Production Management on Geospatial Products	
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	<b>X</b>
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply	<b>X</b>
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT )	<b>X</b>
11-5-0101.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel Voice Radio Station (AM)	<b>X</b>
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	<b>X</b>
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties	<b>X</b>
12-1-0404.05-T01A	Perform Strength Accounting	
12-1-0405.05-T01A	Conduct Replacement Operations	
12-1-0406.05-T01A	Process Personnel and Administrative Actions	
12-1-0410.05-T01A	Provide Legal Support	
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	<b>X</b>
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations	<b>X</b>
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>		
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)	
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)	
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	<b>X</b>
05-1-0026	Report Engineer Information	<b>X</b>

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>Unit Survivability</b>
05-1-0039	Conduct Base Cluster Operations	<b>X</b>
05-1-0721	Plan/Control Augmentation Support	<b>X</b>
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures	<b>X</b>
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	<b>X</b>
05-4-1379	Provide Liaison	<b>X</b>
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	<b>X</b>
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	<b>X</b>
12-1-0408.05-T01A	Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process	<b>X</b>

**Figure 2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix**

## CHAPTER 3

### Mission Outlines/Training Plans

3-1. **General.** This chapter provides a mission outline and describes the use of the MTP for developing battalion training plans. It is designed to assist commanders in preparing training plans for wartime missions. FM 7-0 provides detailed information on training management. They should be used with the MTP to develop battalion training plans.

3-2. **Long-Range Planning.** Long-range planning allows commanders to provide timely input to Army training resource systems and to provide a general direction for the training programs. The long-range plan consists of a calendar covering the planning period and the commander's formal guidance. To develop a long-range plan, the commander must first develop the unit METL and conduct a training assessment. These two actions are the two principal inputs at the beginning of the planning process. FM 7-series manuals provide guidance on developing a unit METL.

a. **Develop the Unit METL.** An analysis of all specified and implied missions and other guidance is the first step in developing a METL. The next step is restating the unit wartime mission. After analyzing the unit missions and external directives, identify a list of tasks that must be accomplished if the unit is to accomplish its wartime mission successfully. Subordinate commanders and key noncommissioned officers (NCOs) participate in selecting the tasks. Develop a task list using the missions contained in Chapter 2 of this MTP, the missions assigned to the battalion by contingency plans, and the missions directed by higher HQ guidance. The commander reviews the task list and selects tasks that are essential to the unit wartime mission. Selected tasks are forwarded to the next higher HQ for approval. The tasks selected are the unit METL. Refer to Figure 3-1.

- (1) DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE**
  - 1. Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
  - 2. Disseminate Intelligence Information
- (2) DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER**
  - 1. Conduct a Tactical Movement
  - 2. Occupy an Assembly Area
  - 3. Reorganize as Infantry
- (3) EMPLOY FIREPOWER**
  - Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support
- (4) PROTECT THE FORCE**
  - 1. Prepare an Obstacle Plan
  - 2. Plan Survivability Operations
  - 3. Direct Survivability Operations
  - 4. Defend the Convoy Against Ground Attack
- (5) PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT**
  - 1. Conduct Administration Operations (Battalion)
  - 2. Treat Casualties
  - 3. Perform Field Sanitation Measures
  - 4. Evacuate Casualties
  - 5. Provide Food Service Support
  - 6. Provide Unit Supply Support
  - 7. Provide Legal Support
- (6) EXERCISE C2**
  - 1. Prepare an Engineer Estimate
  - 2. Prepare an Engineer Annex
  - 3. Prepare an Operation Order
  - 4. Control Combat Operations
  - 5. Report Obstacle Information
  - 6. Manage Battlefield Stress
  - 7. Operate a Net Control Station
  - 8. Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

**Figure 3-1. Sample Battalion METL**

b. Establish the Training Objectives. After the METL is identified, the commander establishes the training objectives. The training objectives are the conditions and standards that describe the situation or the environment and the ultimate outcome criteria that the unit must meet to perform the tasks successfully. Training objectives and standards for the METL can be obtained from this MTP, appropriate STPs, higher HQ command guidance, and the local SOP.

c. Conduct the Training Assessment. The training assessment is the commander’s continuous comparison of the unit current proficiency with the proficiency required to fight and win on the battlefield. The commander, his staff, and the subordinate commanders assess the current proficiency of the organization on mission-essential tasks against the required standard. The commander then indicates the current proficiency by rating each task as “T” (trained), “P” (needs practice), “U” (untrained), or “?” (unknown). The outcome of the training assessment identifies the unit training requirements. Refer to Figure 3-2.

Mission-Essential Tasks	Training Strategy						Overall
	Develop Intelligence	Deploy/ Conduct Maneuver	Employ Firepower	Protect the Force	Perform CSS and Sustainment	Exercise C2	
Occupy an Assembly Area	P	T	P	P	T	U	P
Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	P	T	T	T	?	P	T
Conduct Logistic Operations	T	P	T	T	U	T	T
Report Casualties	U	?	P	P	T	T	U

**Figure 3-2. Sample Commander’s Training Assessment**

d. Develop the Training Strategy and the Commander’s Guidance. The training strategy is developed from the outcome of the training assessment. With the training strategy, the commander and his staff establish training priorities by determining the minimum frequency that each mission-essential task will be trained during the upcoming planning period. It includes the commander’s guidance and his training vision. To develop unit goals, the commander must—

- (1) Review the higher commander’s goals.
- (2) Spell out in real-world terms what his unit will do to comply with the goals of the higher commanders.
- (3) List in broad terms his own goals for the unit. For example—
  - Attain and sustain proficiency in all the MTP missions.
  - Maintain a 90 percent operational-readiness (OR) rate.
  - Attain and sustain a 100 percent crew gunnery qualification.

e. Establish Training Priorities. Priorities are established for training METL tasks by basing the priorities on the training status, task criticality, and the relative training emphasis that the task should receive. Figure 3-3 provides a sample training priority list.

Task	Source	Training Priority
Exercise C2	MTP	1
Control Combat Operations	MTP	2
Disseminate Intelligence Information	MTP	3
Control Combined Arms Breaching	MTP	4
Prepare an Engineer Estimate	MTP	5

**Figure 3-3. Sample Battalion Training Priority List**

f. Prepare a Long-Range Planning Calendar. The long-range planning calendar is the coordinating tool for long-range planning. It is structured by long-range training events to identify the time periods available for training mission-essential tasks. The long-range planning calendar projects the unit training events and activities for the upcoming 12 to 18 months. To prepare a long-range calendar, follow the steps outlined below:

**Step 1.** Select the training events and activities to train the mission. At battalion level, the commander must project the events that will enable him to achieve his goals.

**Step 2.** Assign a time for subordinate units to train. Subordinate leaders must be allowed to develop their training programs in support of the battalion training program.

**Step 3.** Examine various alternatives to make optimum use of the support available to train the unit. Available training resources must be compared against higher HQ-directed training, battalion-directed training events, and subordinate level-projected training events. Resourcing tools available to the battalion commander are the battalion level training model (BLTM), operating tempo (OPTEMPO), and STRAC.

**Step 4.** Obtain approval of long-range plans from higher HQ.

**Step 5.** Issue guidance. Issue training guidance to the staff and subordinate units with the long-range training calendar. This training guidance supplements the long-range training calendar and generally includes the—

- Training policies.
- Types of mandatory training.
- Training resource guidance.
- Quotas for centralized training (schools).
- Training goals.

3-3. Short-Range Planning. A short-range plan is prepared to address the immediate future (three months). Short-range planning develops specific training objectives based on the goals and guidance prepared during long-range planning. The short-range plan adds more detail and may modify the long-range plan based on current assessments. Prepare the short-range plan as described below:

a. Review the Training Program, Current Unit Proficiency, Resources, and Training Environment.

(1) Review the training program described in the long-range planning process. This review determines if the assessments made during long-range planning are still valid.

(2) Review previous short-range planning calendars for training accomplished, training preempted, and lessons learned.

(3) Review the current unit proficiency to update priorities.

(4) Review resources to determine if it is still possible to execute the program described on the long-range planning calendar.

(5) Review the training environment again in this phase of planning because it takes on added importance as training events and activities approach. Factors that affect the training environment and collectively impact the training programs are—

(a) Personnel assigned.

(b) Personnel turbulence.

(c) Morale.

(d) Education programs.

(e) Mandatory training.

(f) Visits, inspections, and tests.

(g) Supplies and equipment.

(h) Non-mission-related activities.

(i) Other programs.

b. Develop a Detailed Plan of Action for Short-Range Plans. Prepare the detailed plan of action as described below:

(1) Examine the events that are scheduled on the long-range training plan to determine if they are still valid.

(2) Transfer valid events to a short-range planning calendar.

(3) Determine the desired outcomes for the scheduled events.

(4) Analyze the missions to determine the related individual, leader, and collective tasks.

(5) Determine if there are any weaknesses. Select tasks to correct these weaknesses and to sustain selected individual, leader, and unit strengths (as necessary).

(6) Select a specific training objective for the mission and the tasks to be trained. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 provide the commander with the training objectives.

(7) Prepare a short-range planning calendar or three monthly schedules. The short-range planning calendar provides a detailed plan of action for the specified period.

(8) Review short-range plans with higher HQ.

(9) Issue guidance. This guidance specifically addresses how training will be accomplished.

3-4. Near-Term Planning. The final phase of planning is the execution of training. Use the short-range plan to prepare weekly training schedules.

- a. Review the unit training program, proficiency, resources, and training environment. As in long- and short-range planning, this review determines if previous assessments are still valid.
- b. Finalize the plans based on the review of the training program. Determine the best sequence for training tasks, and complete the final coordination of the training events and activities.
- c. Prepare trainers, observers/controllers (O/Cs), OPFOR, and support personnel to know what is being trained, why it is being trained, and what their role in the training will be.

3-5. Headquarters and Headquarters Company Training. Planning training for the headquarters and headquarters company (HHC) provides the commander with unique challenges. The most severe challenges are those that deal with time and the availability of personnel. The staff and HQ sections are involved in day-to-day operations and the support of subordinate unit training. It is difficult to find the time to address the training needs of these elements adequately. These elements must be capable of fulfilling their roles in order for the battalion to perform its wartime missions. The strategy selected by the commander for training these elements must include an effective method of training individuals, staffs, leaders, and units.

a. Battalion Staff Training.

(1) Training the staff presents the greatest challenge within a constrained training environment. This MTP identifies the staff training objectives. The staff has numerous tasks to master to be effective. Examples of tasks that any staff must be able to perform include—

- (a) Analyzing the terrain.
- (b) Functioning as an effective team.
- (c) Exchanging information.
- (d) Preparing estimates.
- (e) Giving appraisals.
- (f) Making recommendations and decisions.
- (g) Preparing plans.
- (h) Issuing orders.
- (i) Coordinating and controlling unit operations.
- (j) Supervising subordinate units.

(2) The strategy used to train the staff will vary based on the considerations used to plan training (such as the level of proficiency and the training support available). FM 25-101 contains detailed information for conducting the exercises. Some methods of staff training include the following exercises:

- (a) Tactical exercise without troops. Tactical exercise without troops (TEWT) are low-cost, low-overhead exercises conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. TEWTs are used by commanders to train subordinate leaders and staffs to analyze terrain and conduct unit missions.

(b) Map exercise. Map exercises (MAPEXs) are low-cost, low-overhead training exercises that allow commanders to train their staffs to perform essential integrating and control functions to support their decision under wartime conditions. MAPEXs may be used to train the staff to exchange information, prepare estimates, give appraisals, make recommendations and decisions, prepare plans, and issue orders.

(c) Command post exercise. Command post exercise (CPXs) are medium-cost, medium-overhead training exercises that may be conducted in garrison or a field location. CPXs normally use a battle simulation to drive the staff actions.

(d) Field training exercise. FTXs are high-cost, high-overhead exercises conducted in the field under simulated combat conditions. Unit-conducted FTXs drill the staff in coordination, control, and supervision of unit operations. Normally, the staff completes the staff planning tasks before the exercise begins. Brigade-conducted FTXs provide the best opportunity for the staff to combine all of its skills and perform as they would in wartime, responding to both higher and lower levels.

(3) At battalion level, a method to optimize staff and unit training is to integrate TEWTs; MAPEXs; CPXs; command field exercises (CFXs); and combined arms, live-fire exercises (CALFEXs) to prepare the orders and plans for upcoming battalion FTXs. This exercises the entire spectrum of the staff effectively and makes optimum use of unit field training time. Each unit is different, and only the commander can determine the best method of training his staff.

b. Battalion Training. Training the battalion is a complex task requiring both unit and staff training programs. Normal day-to-day operations place a unique burden on the battalion commander to accomplish training. Elements cross staff lines and responsibilities. The battalion executive officer (XO) coordinates with the battalion commander to ensure that the soldiers are mastering the individual tasks.

3-6. Training Exercise Development. Chapter 4 provides a sample exercise for the battalion to use or modify to meet specific training needs. Since only a sample FTX is contained in the MTP, it is necessary for the battalion to develop exercises for its own use. This section provides general procedures for the battalion staff to use for FTX preparation. Exercise plans are normally prepared while developing the short-range plan. Prepare the exercises as described below:

a. Mission and Task Selection for Training. This was accomplished during the development of the long-range plan and refined during the development of the short-range plan.

b. Site Selection. Confirm the selection of a training area.

c. Scenario Development. After the missions and the tasks are selected, prepare a detailed scenario for the exercise.

(1) List the mission, tasks, and events in the preferred sequence of occurrence.

(2) Identify events necessary for the control of the exercises. These events would normally include the issuance of orders, AARs, and any other administrative or logistical action necessary to conduct the exercise.

(3) Prepare the exercise overlays that show the sequence of actions and the terrain to be used for each event.

(4) Determine the established time for each event using the overlay and scenario. The total time is determined to ensure that the scenario can be completed in the time allocated for the exercise.

d. Observers/Controllers and Opposing Forces Selection. O/Cs and OPFOR are normally required for every FTX and STX when the Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System (MILES) is used. It is difficult for a battalion to provide O/Cs and OPFOR from its own resources. When O/Cs and

OPFOR must be provided from within the battalion, unit leaders may have to serve as the O/Cs for their units and the OPFOR may be selected from personnel or units not essential for attaining the exercise objectives. Ideally, the higher HQ should provide O/Cs and OPFOR.

e. **Control Plan Preparation.** Develop control plans to coordinate the actions of the training units, OPFOR, and O/Cs. The scenario is used and a detailed control plan is prepared. The control plan consists of—

- Detailed schedules of OPFOR actions.
- Detailed instructions for the OPFOR.
- Detailed schedules of activities for units.
- OPFORs and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) for friendly units. Normally, friendly unit actions are controlled through the issuance of OPORDs and FRAGOs.

f. **Evaluation Plan Preparation.** All training is evaluated, either internally or externally. The evaluation plan identifies the tasks to be evaluated, the evaluator, and the evaluation time. The evaluation consists of—

- (1) Specific instructions for the O/Cs.
- (2) A sequential list of T&EOs to be evaluated by each O/C.
- (3) Detailed time schedules for the evaluation and the AARs.

3-7. **Mission Outline.** The mission outline is designed to provide a graphic portrayal of the relationship of the critical wartime mission to FTXs and STXs. This outline should assist the commander and his staff in the preparation of the training plans. Figure 3-4 is a sample mission outline for the battalion.

<b>FTX Conduct Mobility Operations 5-1-E0001</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-2-C310	Conduct a Chemical Survey
05-1-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-0402	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan
05-1-0413	Plan/Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-1-0500	Control a Hasty Gap Crossing
05-1-0520	Plan Breaching Operations
05-1-1035	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process
05-2-1000	Conduct Logistics Operations
05-3-0413	Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy Assembly Area (AA)

**Figure 3-4. Sample Engineer Battalion Mission Outline**

## CHAPTER 4

### Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains a sample FTX. It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the FTX by exercise number, title, and page number.

**Table 4-1. FTX Exercise**

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
FTX 5-1-E0001	Conduct Mobility Operations	4-1

4-2. Field Training Exercise. The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the unit to train its critical wartime missions. It provides a logical sequence for the performance of the tasks previously trained in STXs.

4-3. Situational Training Exercise. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. STXs provide the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. STXs—

- Provide repetitive training on the mission.
- Allow training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- Allow the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.
- Save time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

### ENGINEER BATTALION FTX 5-1-E0001 CONDUCT MOBILITY OPERATIONS

1. Objective. This sample exercise trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the battalion operation, Conduct Mobility Operations.
2. Interface. This exercise supports the task force (TF) requirement to conduct combat operations.
3. Training Enhancers.

a. The training matrix in Chapter 2 shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the battalion mission. Training that will improve its ability to perform its mission are—

(1) Planning, controlling, and coordinating mobility operations. Training may be conducted in garrison and local training areas by one of the following methods:

- (a) Classroom instruction.
- (b) A MAPEX combined with a sand table exercise.
- (c) A CPX conducted in garrison.
- (d) A CFX conducted in a field environment.

- (e) A TEWT.
- (f) A communications exercise (COMEX).
- (g) Simulations and games.

(2) Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in the following activities:

- (a) Aggressive unit sports and physical fitness programs.
- (b) Leader and individual confidence courses.
- (c) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.
- (d) Awareness of the unit heritage.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order (WO) and ends with the compilations of the area damage control (ADC) activities. Figure 4-1 illustrates the general scenario of the exercise. Table 4-2 is a suggested scenario and Figure 4-2 is the movement order for the scenario.

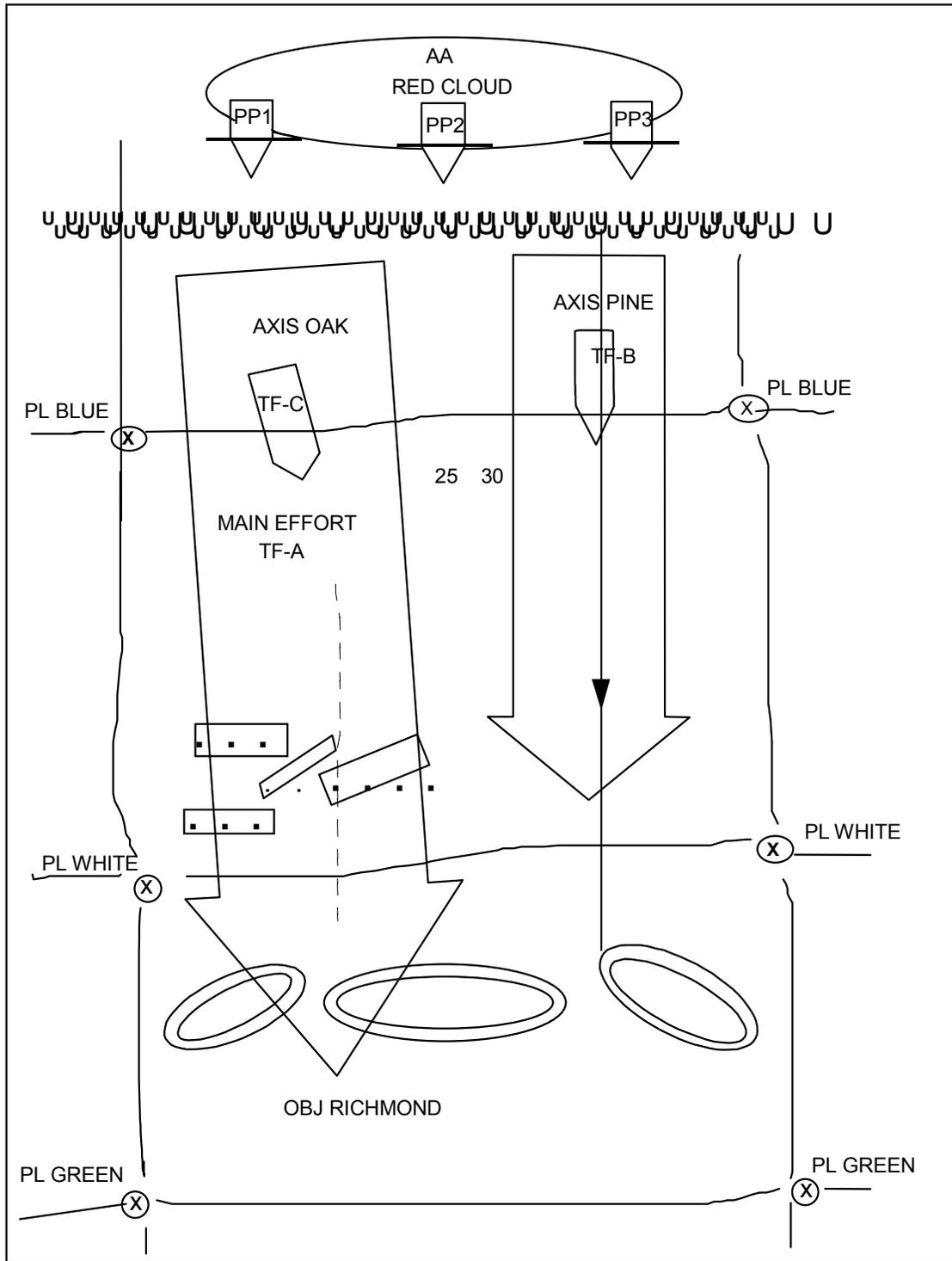


Figure 4-1. General FTX Scenario

**Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario**

<b>Event</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Estimated Time</b>
<u>Module 1</u>		
1	Receive a Bridge WO	15 minutes
2	Receive a Bridge Movement Order	30 minutes
3	Plan and Issue a Movement Order	2.5 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	6 hours
5	Occupy an AA	4 hours
6	Receive a Brigade WO	15 minutes
7	Receive a Brigade OPORD	2 hours
8	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<u>Module 2</u>		
9	Conduct Precombat Operations	20 hours
	Plan/Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	8 hours
	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	4 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Estimate	3 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Annex	1 hour
10	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<u>Module 3</u>		
11	Monitor the Conduct of the Attack, and Coordinate and Issue FRAGOs, as appropriate	9.5 hours
<u>Module 4</u>		
12	Move to the AA	4 hours
13	Conduct a Final AAR	2 hours
*	Defend Against an Air Attack	
*	Control Combat Formations	
*	Prepare an OPORD	
*	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	
*	Manage Battlefield Stress	
*	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	
*	Perform PMCS	
*	Operate a Net Control Station	
*	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel, Voice Radio Station	
	ENDEX	
<b>Total time:</b>		<b>69 hours</b>
*These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.		

### Movement Order

1. SITUATION. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn to vicinity NK 403087. It is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack. The division is moving to occupy an AA in preparation of combat operations.
2. MISSION. The 25th Brigade moves by tactical road march via route Monroe, commencing 011600 hours to AA vicinity NK 243567. The order of march is TF A, TF B, and TF C. The interval between serials is 30 minutes. Close on the AA no later than 011900 hours.
3. EXECUTION.
  - a. Concept of Movement. TF A will be the lead element with assistance from the military police (MP) for traffic control. TF B will follow 30 minutes after TF A. Brigade HQ will follow 30 minutes after TF B. TF C will follow 30 minutes after brigade HQ.
  - b. Tasks to Subordinate Units. The MPs will provide traffic control for the brigade movement.
  - c. Detailed Timings. None.
  - d. Coordinating Instructions.
    - (1) Start point (SP) NK 243567 at 011600 hours.
    - (2) Route Monroe command post (CP) is at NK 248560.
    - (3) Quarters party is the 25th Battalion.
    - (4) Vehicle markings are according to the unit SOP.
    - (5) Additional information, as required.
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Per the unit SOP.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
  - a. Command.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI) are in effect.
    - (2) Visual signals according to the unit SOP.

**Figure 4-2. Sample Movement Order**

#### 4. General Situation.

a. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear, is being reinforced, and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM) indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. This exercise is conducted under all environments during both day and night operations. The battalion is operating in an arid environment. The battalion will operate under threat of NBC attacks, ground or air attacks, indirect fire, and electronic warfare (EW).

c. This exercise is conducted under Threat Level I, II, or III attacks.

d. The battalion should be prepared to relocate at least every three to four days.

e. The unit should be prepared to move by echelons while continuing to provide support to the assigned area.

#### 5. Special Situation.

a. The lead TF encounters an unexpected obstacle that prevents bypass. Enemy contact has been made. The brigade commander gives the following FRAGO:

"TF, conduct breaching operations and continue the attack."

b. After completing the breaches, the TFs receive fire from an enemy position and encounter complex obstacles that prevent bypass. The attack is stalled. The unit is ordered to move in.

#### 6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers and Observers/Controllers. The battalion commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) who will be the trainer and the primary evaluator can conduct this task. At least one other O/C is required for each engineer platoon and OPFOR platoon involved in this FTX.

b. Opposing Forces.

(1) OPFOR is required for the exercise to simulate Threat Level II and III activities.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) MILES can be used, or the trainer and O/C can assess the damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. Each trainer and O/C needs a vehicle and a radio. Radios are also required for OPFOR vehicles during mounted operations.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending on the local training area, an area with a minimum dimension of 15 x 6 kilometers for the hasty attack is desirable. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or "school" solution does not allow an evaluation of the unit ability to conduct a terrain analysis and to select an appropriate course of action.

e. Consolidated Support Requirements. Battalion support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum total of the requirements for each participating subordinate element. See Table 4-3.

Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 5-1-E0001

CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR FTX 5-1-E0001			
Ammunition	DODIC	Estimated Basic Load	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (See note below.)</b>			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>Class IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to their use) during the exercise.</b>			

7. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. Table 4-4 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this FTX.

**Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating FTX 5-1-E0001**

<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Task Number</b>
Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion)	34-1-2005.05-T01A
Maintain Operations Security	71-2-0332.05-T01A
Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)	05-1-0001
Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	05-1-0500
Plan Breaching Operations	05-1-0520
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	05-2-0301
Prepare for a Chemical Attack	3-2-C202.05-T01A
Process Personnel and Administrative Actions	12-1-0406.05-T01A
Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations	43-2-0001.05-T01A
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.05-T01A
Perform Field-Sanitation Measures	08-2-R315.05-T01A
Transport Casualties	08-2-C316.05-T01A
Provide Food-Service Support	10-2-0317.05-T01A
Provide Company Supply Support	10-2-0320.05-T01A
Process Personnel and Administrative Action	12-1-0406.05-T01A
Prepare an Engineer Annex	05-1-0003
Prepare an Operations Order	05-1-0008
Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	05-1-0027
Report Obstacle Information	05-1-0025
Report Engineer Information	05-1-0026
Analyze Battlefield Information	05-1-0415
Control Combined Arms Breaching	05-1-0048
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	05-2-1018
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	11-3-0214.05-T01A
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	11-5-0050.05-T01A
Establish External Communications	11-5-0121.05-T01A
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	11-5-1102.05-T01A
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	08-2-R303.05-T01A
Report Casualties	12-1-0403.05-T01A
Conduct Replacement Operations	12-1-0405.05-T01A

## CHAPTER 5

### Training and Evaluation Outlines

The T&EOs for the unit are listed in Figure 5-1. The mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

#### Develop Intelligence

Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A).....	5-3
Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion) (34-1-2005.05-T01A).....	5-5
Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A).....	5-9

#### Deploy/Conduct Maneuver

Conduct Deployment Operations (05-1-1026).....	5-12
Establish a Geospatial Operations Site (05-2-1385).....	5-16
React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A).....	5-18
Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A).....	5-20
Establish Unit Defense (07-3-0219.05-T01A).....	5-24
React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A).....	5-28
Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A).....	5-30
Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A).....	5-33

#### Protect the Force

Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A).....	5-35
Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A).....	5-38
Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A).....	5-40
Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A).....	5-42
Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A).....	5-44
Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A).....	5-46
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A).....	5-48
React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A).....	5-50
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A).....	5-52
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A).....	5-54
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A).....	5-56
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A).....	5-60
Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911).....	5-62
React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A).....	5-65
Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A).....	5-67
Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A).....	5-69
Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A).....	5-71
Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A).....	5-74

#### Perform CSS and Sustainment

Conduct Administrative Operations (05-2-1007).....	5-76
Maintain a Geospatial Database (05-4-1373).....	5-79
Deploy a Geospatial Database (05-4-1374).....	5-81
Perform a Geospatial Collection Effort (05-4-1376).....	5-83
Perform Quality Control Measures on Geospatial Products (05-4-1377).....	5-85
Perform Production Management on Geospatial Products (05-4-1378).....	5-87
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A).....	5-89
Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A).....	5-92
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A).....	5-94

Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel Voice Radio Station (AM) (11-5-0101.05-T01A) .....	5-96
Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A) .....	5-99
Report Casualties (12-1-0403.05-T01A).....	5-101
Perform Strength Accounting (12-1-0404.05-T01A).....	5-103
Conduct Replacement Operations (12-1-0405.05-T01A).....	5-105
Process Personnel and Administrative Actions (12-1-0406.05-T01A) .....	5-107
Provide Legal Support (12-1-0410.05-T01A) .....	5-110
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A).....	5-113
Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A) .....	5-115
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>	
Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion) (05-1-0002) .....	5-118
Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion) (05-1-0003) .....	5-122
Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (05-1-0008) .....	5-124
Report Engineer Information (05-1-0026).....	5-127
Conduct Base Cluster Operations (05-1-0039) .....	5-129
Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721) .....	5-131
Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-1218) .....	5-133
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018).....	5-137
Provide Liaison (05-4-1379) .....	5-141
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A) .....	5-143
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A) .....	5-145
Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process (12-1-0408.05-T01A) .....	5-149

**Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.40)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy equipment and documents have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, and radios.</li> <li>b. Annotated the date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of capture.</li> <li>d. Noted the capturing unit.</li> <li>e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag if the items were taken from enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</li> </ul>		
* 2. The element leader reports the capture of equipment and documents to higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and documents.</li> <li>b. Stated the date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Identified the capturing unit.</li> <li>d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.</li> </ul>		
* 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment.</li> <li>b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section

**TASK:** Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion) (34-1-2005.05-T01A)  
 (FM 34-1) (AR 380-5) (AR 530-1)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 21-31) (FM 3-0)  
 (FM 3-25.26) (FM 34-3) (FM 34-60)  
 (FM 34-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is engaged in combat operations and has received a mission from higher headquarters (HQ). Contact with the enemy has occurred. The commander provides the planning guidance and a concept for operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) section must identify the commander's intelligence requirements and complete the intelligence annex to the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN) within the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The S2 section disseminates and processes the information and intelligence and employs security measures. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The S2 section identifies the commander's intelligence requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received the commander's planning guidance and the concept of operations after receiving the mission from the higher HQ.</li> <li>b. Developed and prioritized the essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) and the priority intelligence requirements (PIR).</li> <li>c. Received the approved EEFI and PIR from the commander.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the appropriate essential elements of threat information (EETI) required for various mobility and/or countermobility or survivability and general engineering projects were identified. The requirements for EETI were developed in coordination with the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S2 section completes the intelligence annex to the OPORD and/or the OPLAN in the time outlined in the commander's guidance.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the intelligence estimate.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reviewed the corps or division Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence) (G2) estimate and intelligence summary.</li> <li>(2) Extracted the pertinent mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) information.</li> <li>(3) Provided the battalion staff with information to assist in staff planning.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Provided the commander with an intelligence estimate.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Noted the particular enemy capabilities and vulnerabilities including engineer capabilities of immediate concern to the deployed battalion assets.</li> <li>(2) Incorporated significant intelligence into the formal estimate.</li> <li>(3) Disseminated the estimates to the staff.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Prepared the intelligence portion of the OPORD and the intelligence annex.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reviewed the division and the corps PIR.</li> <li>(2) Established information requirements for the battalion security plans.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Coordinated with the S3 regarding the use of organic assets to collect information.</p> <p>d. Performed the staff coordination.</p> <p>(1) Provided the staff with an overview of the current enemy situation to assist in the staff planning process.</p> <p>(2) Reviewed and provided input to the staff mission analysis.</p> <p>3. The S2 section disseminates the combat information and transmits the intelligence to the appropriate units and agencies in time for the commanders to plan and mass forces at the proper time and place to successfully influence and win the battle.</p> <p>a. Disseminated the combat information.</p> <p>(1) Disseminated the highly perishable combat information in a spot report format immediately after receipt.</p> <p>(2) Ensured that the division or corps G2 received the combat information.</p> <p>(3) Ensured that the battalion staff and subordinate units received the combat information.</p> <p>b. Disseminated the intelligence.</p> <p>(1) Received continuous updates from the division or corps G2.</p> <p>(2) Disseminated the intelligence to the higher, lower, and adjacent HQ by the fastest means available, such as frequency-modulated (FM), secure, or courier.</p> <p>(3) Ensured that the battalion S3 and all the staff elements within the tactical operations center (TOC) received the intelligence.</p> <p>c. Received and disseminated the enemy nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) operations data.</p> <p>(1) Received and recorded reports of the enemy NBC capabilities on friendly systems.</p> <p>(2) Evaluated the effects of the enemy NBC capabilities. Reported this evaluation to the staff and subordinate units.</p> <p>d. Prepared the reports.</p> <p>(1) Reviewed the decision support template provided by the division or corps G2.</p> <p>(2) Reviewed the division or corps estimate of the most probable enemy course of action (COA).</p> <p>(3) Used the report formats that were provided.</p> <p>4. The S2 section processes the information by recording, evaluating, analyzing, and integrating it into the existing intelligence to aid the commander in reaching a conclusion.</p> <p>a. The S2 section recorded the information.</p> <p>(1) Maintained the intelligence journal, including the record of important reports and messages that have been received and transmitted and the actions taken in response, covering a 24-hour period.</p> <p>(2) Posted the situation map (SITMAP) with information and intelligence aspects of the current disposition and activities of the enemy.</p> <p>b. The S2 section evaluated the information.</p> <p>(1) Determined if the information was pertinent.</p> <p>(2) Verified the reliability of the source or agency.</p> <p>(3) Validated the credibility of the information.</p> <p>c. The S2 section analyzed the information and intelligence.</p> <p>(1) Integrated the incoming intelligence with the information in the database.</p> <p>(2) Assessed the information and the intelligence.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Formulated and test hypothesized about enemy activities or the impact of the area of operations (AO) characteristics on the mission.</p> <p>(4) Formulated conclusions based on available information of the enemy situation, disposition, and probable COA.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The conclusion should be the meaning of the information in relation to the AO, the enemy information, and the enemy use of tactical deception or counter deception.</b></p> <p>5. The S2 section employs security measures to ensure that the classified intelligence information is protected and access is denied to the threat.</p> <p>a. Coordinated the personnel security clearance program.</p> <p>(1) Coordinated with the Adjutant (US Army) (S1) and the S3 to determine the degree of security clearance required for each duty position in the HQ and subordinate units.</p> <p>(2) Supervised the submission of the appropriate forms, documents, and requests for security clearance.</p> <p>(3) Maintained a roster of unit personnel, indicating their security clearance level. Distributed copies to the HQ and subordinate units, as required.</p> <p>b. Administered the information security program.</p> <p>(1) Ensured that the classification of the documents was monitored.</p> <p>(2) Ensured that the access, dissemination, and accounting procedures for classified documents were established by the HQ. Ensured that these procedures were monitored in subordinate units.</p> <p>(3) Supervised and monitored the storage and safekeeping of the classified information in the HQ and subordinate units.</p> <p>c. Administered the sensitive compartmented information (SCI) security program.</p> <p>(1) Prepared, along with the HQ commander, a physical-security plan for inside the battalion TOC.</p> <p>(2) Established a program to control access to the facilities.</p> <p>(3) Advised the HQ commander on the threat to ensure that an adequate security force was provided to the TOC.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)  
 (AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 24-33)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-19.30)  
 (FM 34-60)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic-warfare (EW) measures and air and ground reconnaissance elements. The element can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising the elements main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders check or perform information security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis.</li> <li>b. Prohibited fraternization with civilians.</li> <li>c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection.</li> <li>d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information.</li> <li>e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.</li> <li>f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element performs camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concealed and camouflaged with natural materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground or air observation.</li> <li>b. Moved on covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick.</li> <li>d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit position.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged earth berms.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the camouflage nets were erected.</li> <li>d. Evaded crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads.</li> <li>e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Ensured that vehicles that were parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted.</p> <p>g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage.</p> <p>h. Evaded movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection.</p> <p>4. The element employs the company net control station (NCS) and enforces communications security (COMSEC).</p> <p>a. Enforced signal operation instructions (SOI) and signal supplemental instructions (SSI) procedures, such as challenges, authentications decoding, and call signs and frequencies. Ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy.</p> <p>b. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures.</p> <p>c. Followed COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence.</p> <p>d. Followed procedures for operations during jamming.</p> <p>e. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service.</p> <p>f. Used visual signals according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>5. The element employs physical security measures.</p> <p>a. Employed observation posts (OPs).</p> <p>b. Employed counterreconnaissance patrols.</p> <p>c. Followed stand-to procedures.</p> <p>d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted.</p> <p>e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire.</p> <p>f. Used the challenge and password.</p> <p>g. Limited access into the area of the unit.</p> <p>h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.</p> <p>i. Picked up litter.</p> <p>j. Employed air guards.</p> <p>* 6. All leaders enforce noise and light discipline.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Conduct Deployment Operations (05-1-1026)  
 (DD FORM 1387-2) (FM 55-65)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is directed to report to a port of embarkation (POE). This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion deploys all unit personnel, equipment, and basic loads by the required modes of transportation (road, rail, air, or sea) to its destination by the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The battalion staff develops and maintains strategic movement plans and the standing operating procedure (SOP).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed and maintained contingency operations for all modes of transportation.</li> <li>b. Developed individual load plans for aircraft, rail cars, and vehicles based on the unit table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE).</li> <li>c. Prepared a unit movement plan that identified administrative personnel processing, security, logistics, and coordination requirements for implementation.</li> <li>d. Developed procedures for detailed personnel processing, censorship, and security.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with the installation and transportation activities to ensure the availability of securing materials required for each move.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The battalion initiates the unit plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated recall procedures. Accounted for all unit personnel no later than the time specified in the SOP.</li> <li>b. Established security of the unit area.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Concealed unit markings on all equipment and personnel.</li> <li>(2) Restricted personnel to the unit area.</li> <li>(3) Implemented a censorship plan.</li> <li>(4) Restricted access to the unit area.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Established communications to higher and subordinate units.</li> <li>d. Reported personnel, logistics, and maintenance status to higher headquarters (HQ). Ensured that reports were 100 percent complete.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The battalion staff performs unit movement staff functions. The staff ensured that—                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) received and disseminated the operations concept to the battalion staff and subunit leaders.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) identified the companies and corrected shortcomings in equipment (to include personal equipment), supplies, common table of allowances (CTA)/50, and basic loads.</p> <p>c. The S3 or S4 packed equipment loads according to vehicle load plans.</p> <p>d. The S3 or S4 packaged and marked the load with Department of Defense (DD) special handling data or certification.</p> <p>e. The S3 or S4 submitted requests to the movement control center (MCC) and/or installation transportation officer (ITO) for convoy and special hauling permits and additional hauls as required.</p> <p>4. The unit conducts the readiness actions outlined in the unit SOP.</p> <p>a. Secured the unit area.</p> <p>b. Loaded and secured ammunition.</p> <p>c. Processed replacement personnel.</p> <p>d. Secured privately owned vehicles (POV).</p> <p>e. Inventoried and secured personal property.</p> <p>f. Conducted communications and electronics checks.</p> <p>g. Updated dependent affairs, such as enrollment in the Defense Enrollment Eligibility Reporting System (DEERS) and service member pay.</p> <p>5. The subordinate elements prepare for movement.</p> <p>a. Ensured that equipment was packed and loaded according to the load plans.</p> <p>b. Determined the center of balance that was indicated on each item prepared for air movement.</p> <p>c. Prepared and reduced all vehicles to the configuration required by the mode of transportation being used.</p> <p>d. Assembled unit personnel at designated staging areas. The ITO and the transportation movements office(r) (TMO) supervised equipment inspections.</p> <p>e. Accomplished loading, by the unit load teams, according to the approved load plans.</p> <p>6. The battalion staff inspects subordinate units. The staff included the following items:</p> <p>a. CTA 50-900, unit equipment, and personnel clothing.</p> <p>b. Vehicle maintenance. Ensured that the vehicles met deployment standards.</p> <p>c. Weapons issue and accountability.</p> <p>d. The mess equipment, if available.</p> <p>e. The basic load for compliance with load plans.</p> <p>7. The battalion deploys by convoy to the railhead, POE, or airhead as required.</p> <p>8. The battalion performs preembarkation operations at the departure airfield. Ensured that—</p> <p>a. The S3 established liaison with the departure airfield control group (DACG).</p> <p>b. The S4 had shoring material available and readily accessible.</p> <p>c. The S3 appointed chalk commanders and that the DACG briefed them.</p> <p>d. The S3 prepared passenger equipment manifests and gave them to the DACG.</p> <p>e. The S3 ensured that each chalk responded to all call-forward orders and directed issue by the DACG before release to the airlift control element (ALCE).</p> <p>f. The S4 or ALCE had shoring, floor protection material, and 463L pallet dunnage available and ready for use, when required.</p> <p>g. The S3 maintained chalk integrity and that the chalks were properly loaded.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. The companies assembled vehicles, personnel, and equipment into chinks according to the unit readiness SOP.</p> <p>i. The companies performed final preparation of vehicles and equipment for loading.</p> <p>j. The companies maintained unit integrity and security.</p> <p>k. The chalk commander secured two copies of the final passenger and equipment manifest, one for himself and one according to ALCE instructions.</p> <p>9. The battalion deploys by rail to the POE. Ensured that—</p> <p>a. The S3 or S4 checked the availability of blocking and bracing material.</p> <p>b. The S3 assembled troops, vehicles, and equipment at the designated railhead staging area. The S3 prepared and processed for movement according to instructions contained in the applicable publications, the unit SOP, and higher headquarters (HQ) directives.</p> <p>c. The S3 inspected loading, blocking, and bracing of vehicles and equipment by unit personnel. The ITO or TMO checked the cargo documentation.</p> <p>d. The battalion accomplished tie-down procedures according to applicable technical manuals (TMs) for each type of equipment.</p> <p>e. The unit, ITO, and railroad representatives performed joint inspections of the loaded equipment before the release of movement.</p> <p>10. The battalion deploys by sea. Ensured that—</p> <p>a. The S3 coordinated with the MCC for equipment operators and maintenance personnel for the port support activity.</p> <p>b. The MCC inspected the chalked equipment and stencils or marked the ship manifest before loading.</p> <p>c. The S3 or S4 obtained the estimated date of arrival at the POE from the MCC ship manifest.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
63-1-8063	COORDINATE REAR DETACHMENT SUPPORT
63-1-8064	PERFORM HOME STATION REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES
63-2-8001	PERFORM DEPLOYMENT ALERT ACTIVITIES
63-2-8003	PERFORM PREDEPLOYMENT TRAINING ACTIVITIES
63-2-8004	PERFORM PREDEPLOYMENT SUPPLY ACTIVITIES
63-2-8005	PERFORM PREDEPLOYMENT MAINTENANCE ACTIVITIES

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
63-2-8014	PERFORM REDEPLOYMENT PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE ACTIONS
63-2-8016	PERFORM REDEPLOYMENT SUPPLY ACTIVITIES
63-2-8017	PERFORM REDEPLOYMENT MAINTENANCE ACTIVITIES
63-2-8029	PLAN UNIT REDEPLOYMENT

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section

**TASK:** Establish a Geospatial Operations Site (05-2-1385)  
 (FM 3-34.230) (FM 5-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a mission directive to establish a topographic operations site. A table of organization and equipment (TOE) is available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** TOE equipment is properly employed and is ready for operations. The geospatial operational site must be operational and concealed as required by the mission directive.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander or first sergeant (1SG) selects the location for a topographic operations site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected buildings that provided cover for topographic operations.</li> <li>b. Selected a suitable field location, if necessary.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: If buildings are not suitable to sustain a topographic operation and a field location is chosen, consider whether the area is level, area is defensible and easily accessible and whether concealment is available.</b></p> <p>* 2. The element leader or platoon sergeant selects the location for section vans.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated the location of equipment.</li> <li>b. Designated fighting positions.</li> </ul> <p>3. Squad members position vans.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Leveled vans without raising tires off the ground.</li> <li>b. Grounded vans.</li> <li>c. Connected the electric power.</li> <li>d. Erected camouflage nets.</li> <li>e. Connected the water supply, if required.</li> <li>f. Connected communications, if required.</li> </ul> <p>4. Squad members prepare the interior of the van for operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Unboxed and prepared equipment for operation.</li> <li>b. Stored empty containers in a safe and dry location.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader/platoon sergeant inspects the site to ensure that it is ready for operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Grounded vans.</li> <li>b. Leveled vans.</li> <li>c. Ensured that vans had electric power.</li> <li>d. Stored empty equipment containers.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-257-1107	Prepare the Stereo Zoom Transfer Scope for Movement
052-257-1108	Prepare the ZT4-H (Horizontal) Zoom Transfer Scope for Movement

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-5-0302	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert, "Incoming!" or a round impacts on or near their location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Within 2 seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The element leader gave the direction and distance to move; for example, "3 o'clock, 200 meters."</li> <li>b. Vehicle commanders repeated the "Incoming!" alert to squad personnel.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Personnel closed all hatches.</li> <li>(2) Drivers moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicles—                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Halted as close as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount.</li> <li>(2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel kept low and ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions.</li> <li>b. Protected any dismounted personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The element members move to designated rally points according to the element operation order (OPORD).</li> <li>5. The element establishes immediate security at the designated rally point.</li> <li>6. The element consolidates and reorganizes.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 7. The element leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP) to higher headquarters (HQ). <b>NOTE: Digital units send the SHELREP using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Upon receipt of an operation order (OPORD), the element moves to a new location given in the OPORD and conducts operations at that location. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Threat mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the start point (SP).</li> <li>b. Identified locations of friendly units.</li> <li>c. Identified potential ambush sites.</li> <li>d. Identified checkpoints (CPs).</li> <li>e. Identified sites to be used for scheduled halts.</li> <li>f. Indicated the release point (RP).</li> </ul> <p>2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dressed in the designated MOPP gear.</li> <li>b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm.</li> <li>c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices.</li> <li>d. Verified map information.</li> <li>e. Identified capacities of bridges and underpasses.</li> <li>f. Identified the location of culverts, ferries, forging areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites.</li> <li>g. Prepared the map overlay.</li> <li>h. Computed the travel time.</li> <li>i. Prepared the strip map.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The convoy commander coordinates for required support with higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included military police (MP) support.</li> <li>b. Included medical support.</li> <li>c. Included fire support (FS).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Included engineer support.</li> <li>e. Included maintenance contact team support.</li> <li>f. Included additional requirements.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element prepares vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>b. Corrected minor deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Reported major deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Hardened vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials.</li> <li>e. Covered unit identification markings on vehicles and personnel.</li> <li>f. Covered or removed reflective surfaces.</li> <li>g. Placed antennas at their lowest height.</li> <li>h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned cargo vehicle positions.</li> <li>b. Positioned control vehicles without setting a pattern.</li> <li>c. Assigned recovery vehicle positions.</li> <li>d. Arranged hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy.</li> <li>e. Specified passenger locations.</li> <li>f. Appointed air guards.</li> <li>g. Organized the trail party element.</li> <li>h. Provided vehicle position listings to the trail party leader.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The convoy commander briefs the convoy personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver.</li> <li>b. Identified the convoy chain of command.</li> <li>c. Detailed the convoy route.</li> <li>d. Specified the march rate and the catch-up speed.</li> <li>e. Specified convoy intervals.</li> <li>f. Identified the scheduled halts.</li> <li>g. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>h. Briefed immediate-action security measures.</li> <li>i. Briefed blackout condition procedures.</li> <li>j. Specified the location of medical support.</li> <li>k. Specified the location of maintenance support.</li> <li>l. Briefed communication procedures.</li> <li>m. Specified the location and the identification of the destination.</li> </ul> <p>7. The convoy crosses the SP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Verified that vehicles had crossed the SP.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the SP crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The convoy commander provides convoy information to higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the SP crossing time.</li> <li>b. Reported the CP clearance, when crossed.</li> <li>c. Pointed out data that conflicted with the maps.</li> <li>d. Used the correct signal operation instructions (SOI) codes in all transmissions.</li> <li>e. Reported the RP crossing time.</li> </ul> <p>9. The convoy maintains march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the designated march speed.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals.</li> <li>c. Crossed CPs as scheduled.</li> <li>d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals.</li> <li>e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts.</li> </ul> <p>10. The company conducts a scheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time.</li> <li>b. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals.</li> <li>c. Moved vehicles off the road.</li> <li>d. Established local security.</li> <li>e. Performed PMCS.</li> <li>f. Inspected vehicle loads.</li> <li>g. Departed at the specified time.</li> </ul> <p>11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted the march column.</li> <li>b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ.</li> <li>c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals.</li> <li>d. Established local security.</li> <li>e. Reported the resumption of the march to higher HQ.</li> </ul> <p>12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a visual adjustment period.</li> <li>b. Prepared vehicles for blackout conditions.</li> <li>c. Maintained prescribed vehicle distances.</li> <li>d. Wore night vision goggles (specified personnel).</li> <li>e. Wore regular eye protection goggles.</li> <li>f. Used ground guides during poor visibility periods.</li> </ul> <p>13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the disabled vehicles.</li> <li>b. Repaired the disabled vehicles, when possible.</li> <li>c. Towed the vehicles, if necessary.</li> <li>d. Reported the status of the vehicles to the convoy commander.</li> </ul> <p>14. The convoy moves through urban areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions.</li> <li>b. Used close-column formation.</li> <li>c. Obeyed traffic control directions.</li> <li>d. Used direction guides at critical intersections.</li> </ul> <p>15. The convoy crosses the RP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
19-1-1102	Coordinate Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance
19-1-1201	Prepare Traffic Control Plan

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Establish Unit Defense (07-3-0219.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) with a mission to occupy part of a larger unit defensive sector or is isolated and must provide its own security or defense. The element may be opposed by as much as a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element completes all preparations for the defense not later than the time specified in the order. The enemy does not surprise the platoon. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader performs a leader's reconnaissance of the tentative defensive position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Searched the area to ensure that it was free of the enemy, mines, and booby traps.</li> <li>b. Established local security.</li> <li>c. Surveyed the area for nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination.</li> <li>d. Designated sectors and general locations for operations, vehicles, and automatic and antiarmor weapons based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: At night, the designation of positions must be more exact. Leaders may elect to reconnoiter the area first, position the observation posts (OPs), and then have the guides bring the other members into position.</b></p> <p>2. The designated security or the operation team moves to assigned positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Emplaced the M8A1 Chemical Alarm System, if assigned, within 5 minutes of occupying the OP.</li> <li>b. Positioned the OP within range of the supporting small arms fire.</li> <li>c. Provided cover and concealment for the OP personnel.</li> <li>d. Designated covered and concealed routes to and from the OP.</li> <li>e. Established communications from the operations section to the unit command post (CP).</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The primary means should be wire, supplemented by messenger and radio.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Disseminated the locations of all friendly personnel in the sector.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The platoon leader and the platoon forward observer (FO) designate targets to support the OP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the target reference points (TRPs).</li> <li>b. Included the OP targets within the fire plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The OP team provides early warning.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided continuous early warning out to a range. Warned of enemy observation, direct fire, or assault on the main body.</li> <li>b. Detected all enemy activity within the vicinity of the unit position.</li> <li>c. Adjusted illumination or high-explosive (HE) rounds on enemy targets.</li> <li>d. Emplaced expedient early warning devices before dark, if possible.</li> <li>e. Demonstrated the correct use of the current challenge and password.</li> <li>f. Alternated the OP sites when required, due to the changing visibility or enemy activity.</li> </ol> <p>* 5. The element leader designates the primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions for key weapons or vehicles, where applicable, while emplacing the rest of the platoon.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned the machine guns to obtain grazing fire along the most likely dismounted avenue of approach (AA).</li> <li>b. Positioned the antiarmor weapons to cover the likely armor AA or the assigned engagement area (EA).</li> <li>c. Ensured that the positions were mutually supported along armor and dismounted infantry AAs.</li> <li>d. Positioned the M203 grenade launchers, if assigned, to cover dead space in the terrain outside hand grenade range.</li> </ol> <p>* 6. Leaders place fighting positions to engage targets in designated sectors of fire, covering the most dangerous AAs first.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the sector of fire based on the type of weapon and its range.</li> <li>b. Assigned all personnel to a fighting position.</li> </ol> <p>* 7. The element leader coordinates or contacts adjacent units.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established boundary responsibilities.</li> <li>b. Discovered and eliminated any gaps in the defensive sector.</li> <li>c. Ensured that observation and fires overlapped.</li> </ol> <p>8. The element occupies defensive positions.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The leader establishes task priorities. Normally, these are in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) but can be modified as needed (based on METT-TC considerations) by the platoon leader or the company commander.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Physically occupied the assigned positions.</li> <li>b. Physically reconnoitered in front of each position to become familiar with the terrain, locate dead space, and view the terrain from the enemy's perspective.</li> <li>c. Prepared and forwarded crew-served weapons range cards to the squad leader within 15 minutes of positioning.</li> <li>d. Installed aiming stakes.</li> <li>e. Cleared fields of fire.</li> <li>f. Emplaced obstacles according to the company obstacle plan.</li> <li>g. Dug fighting positions to armpit depth with 0.5 meters of the parapet.</li> <li>h. Constructed overhead cover for the fighting position.</li> <li>i. Camouflaged positions and vehicles from aerial and ground observation, ensuring that fighting positions were not detected from a distance of more than 35 meters from the front of the position.</li> <li>j. Stockpiled ammunition, food, and water.</li> <li>k. Constructed alternate and supplementary positions.</li> <li>l. Ensured that all element members knew the element CP location.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 9. The element leader, along with the fire support team (FIST) or FO if applicable, plans for the employment of indirect fires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned the fires along the enemy's AAs.</li> <li>b. Planned the fires at known or likely enemy positions.</li> <li>c. Planned final protective fires (FPF), if allocated.</li> <li>d. Registered and adjusted TRPs, if available and the situation permitted.</li> </ul> <p>10. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) establishes communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used wire as primary communications, if available.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communications with operations section, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and fire support team.</li> <li>c. Conducted periodic communications checks to ensure that all communications were operational.</li> <li>d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communications.</li> </ul> <p>*11. The element leader prepares a sector sketch.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the main terrain features and the range to the terrain features.</li> <li>b. Identified the location of the squad fighting position location.</li> <li>c. Indicated the primary and secondary sectors of fire for each position.</li> <li>d. Identified the type of weapon and the fire control measures (FPF, principle direction of fire [PDF], and the final protective line [FPL]) for each position.</li> <li>e. Identified the squad leader's position and the OP locations.</li> <li>f. Marked the dead space.</li> <li>g. Identified obstacle locations.</li> <li>h. Indicated the direction of north.</li> <li>i. Forwarded a copy of the sector sketch to the platoon leader within 30 minutes of being assigned a sector.</li> </ul> <p>*12. The element leader prepares a platoon sector sketch.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the platoon sector or the EA.</li> <li>b. Denoted the primary, alternate, and supplementary squad positions and the sectors of fire.</li> <li>c. Indicated the location of vehicles, antiarmor, and automatic weapon positions with the primary sectors of fire, the FPL, or the PDF for the primary vehicle weapons system, automatic weapons, and TRPs.</li> <li>d. Identified the location of OPs and patrol routes, if any had been planned.</li> <li>e. Outlined the maximum engagement lines for the primary weapon systems.</li> <li>f. Identified the location of indirect-fire targets and FPFs, if any had been allocated.</li> <li>g. Indicated the direction of north.</li> <li>h. Illustrated the unit identification, up to company level.</li> <li>i. Indicated the date-time group.</li> <li>j. Identified the position of the platoon CP.</li> <li>k. Forwarded a copy of the platoon sector sketch to the company commander within 1 hour of assigning squad leaders sectors.</li> </ul> <p>13. The element continues to improve defensive positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Improved positions according to the SOP work priorities.</li> <li>b. Upgraded positions as directed by higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-0127	Provide Support for Survivability Operations
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-0314	Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans
05-2-0508	Plan for Survivability Operations
05-2-0510	Direct Survivability Construction
05-2-0514	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles
05-2-0516	Emplace Situational Obstacles
05-3-0303	Construct Wire Obstacles

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (FM 3-20.98) (FM 34-2-1)  
 (FM 7-92)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a prepared kill zone. The enemy initiates the ambush with a casualty-producing device and a high volume of fire. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, the Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and the rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. The presence of civilians can restrict the use of fires and reduce the combat power available to the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element reacts immediately to the ambush based on the type (near, far). The platoon disengages the element in the kill zone or forces the enemy to withdraw. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, and higher headquarters (HQ) and other special orders. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: Leaders ensure that the ROE and the ROI are disseminated to subordinate personnel.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Personnel in the kill zone react to a near ambush (within hand grenade range).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Returned fire immediately; assumed covered positions; and threw fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades.</li> <li>b. Assaulted individually through the ambush using individual fire and movement immediately after the grenades detonated.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Personnel not in the kill zone react to a near ambush.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Initiated immediate suppressive fires against the enemy.</li> <li>c. Took up covered positions.</li> <li>d. Shifted fires as personnel in the kill zone assaulted through the ambush.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Personnel receiving fire in a far ambush (beyond hand grenade range) immediately return fire and take up covered positions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Suppressed or destroyed enemy crew-served weapons first.</li> <li>b. Obscured the enemy position with smoke.</li> <li>c. Sustained suppressive fires and shifted them as the assaulting squads fought through the enemy position.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Personnel not receiving fire react to a far ambush.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved by a covered and concealed route to a vulnerable flank of the enemy position.</li> <li>b. Assaulted using fire and movement techniques.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The element forward observer (FO) calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the element leader. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used indirect fires to isolate the enemy position.</li> <li>b. Adjusted fires on any retreating enemy.</li> </ul> * 6. The platoon leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the situation to higher HQ.</li> <li>b. Consolidated and reorganized as necessary.</li> <li>c. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to move cross-country, mounted or dismounted. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFOR). The element retains its ability to move. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader assigns areas of responsibility (AORs) during the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned all squads to an AOR.</li> <li>b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual AORs.</li> <li>c. Ensured that there was all-around coverage of the platoon, including air guard.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader designates a route for the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that there was cover from the direct fire of known enemy positions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The squads use a wedge formation during the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Formed one or two wedges based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.</li> <li>b. Closed the wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. Maintained the rate of movement.</li> <li>c. Opened the wedges as obstructions to the movement and to diminish control.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader designates a movement technique to use that is based on METT-TC factors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a traveling-movement technique when enemy contact was not likely.</li> <li>b. Designated a traveling-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was possible.</li> <li>c. Designated a bounding-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was likely.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The element performs a traveling-movement technique.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained fire teams about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> <li>b. Moved the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Moved in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles when mounted.</p> <p>d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</p> <p>6. The element performs a traveling-overwatch-movement technique.</p> <p><b>NOTE: When dismounted, the lead element uses a traveling-overwatch-movement technique, and the trailing squads use a traveling-movement technique.</b></p> <p>a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the main body of the platoon by 50 to 100 meters.</p> <p>b. Conducted the movement (mounted) with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the element; other vehicles were 50 to 100 meters apart.</p> <p>c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</p> <p>7. The element performs a bounding-overwatch-movement technique.</p> <p>a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch.</p> <p>b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.</p> <p>8. The bounding squad moves.</p> <p>a. Signaled to the platoon leader that it was beginning its movement.</p> <p>b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound.</p> <p>c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed.</p> <p>d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operations security (OPSEC).</p> <p>e. Moved so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element.</p> <p>f. Established an overwatch position upon completion of its bound to overwatch the succeeding bound.</p> <p>g. Informed the element leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch.</p> <p>h. Alerted the element leader and the overwatching element of any enemy that was detected, any obstacles that were encountered, or any danger areas.</p> <p>9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch.</p> <p>a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the movement of the bounding squad to its next overwatch position.</p> <p>b. Oriented the weapons on likely enemy positions.</p> <p>c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route.</p> <p>d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed.</p> <p>e. Alerted the bounding squad and the element leader of any enemy that it detected.</p> <p>f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed the overwatch position.</p> <p>10. The element maintains security during movement.</p> <p>a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (the interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).</p> <p>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</p> <p>c. Observed sectors of fires to avoid any enemy that was approaching the platoon within 35 meters and any aircraft that was attacking the platoon without warning.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*11. Leaders use control measures during the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement.</li> <li>b. Positioned key weapons.</li> <li>c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement.</li> </ul> <p>*12. The element leader controls movement of the elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas.</li> <li>b. Used arm-and-hand signals once contact was made.</li> <li>c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made.</li> </ul> <p>*13. The element leader knows the elements location at all times.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Expressed the location of the platoon as a 6-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics.</li> <li>b. Knew the location of all the elements including the leading, flanking, and trailing company elements. Was accurate to plus or minus 100 meters.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S1 Section

**TASK:** Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A)

(FM 7-22.7)

(AR 220-10)

(AR 600-38)

(AR 600-8)

(AR 600-8-14)

(AR 600-8-2)

(AR 600-8-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is tasked to deploy to a theater of operations. The element is assigned the responsibility to process personnel for overseas movement. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element is administratively prepared for deployment within the time frame specified in the operation order (OPORD) or the letter of instruction (LOI).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) plans the preparation for oversea movement (POM).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established processing requirements.</li> <li>b. Established support requirements.</li> <li>c. Published the POM plan.</li> <li>d. Briefed the command group.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the POM with the brigade S1.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The S1 or the personnel and administration center (PAC) supervisor coordinates POM requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel) (G1), for personnel service company (PSC) support.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) for legal support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the medical department activity (MEDDAC) and the dental activity (DENTAC) for medical and dental support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the provost marshal (PM) for privately owned vehicle (POV) storage.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The S1 section participates in the POM process.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted liaison with the POM site commander.</li> <li>b. Briefed soldiers on POM procedures.</li> <li>c. Issued the POM checklist.</li> <li>d. Reviewed family care plans.</li> <li>e. Reviewed pay elections.</li> <li>f. Assisted soldiers in completing postal forms.</li> <li>g. Reviewed the POM checklist for completeness.</li> <li>h. Identified nonparticipants and nondeployable soldiers.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The S1 or PAC supervisor conducts briefings for family members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated installation support.</li> <li>b. Established the briefing site and schedules.</li> <li>c. Published a family support packet.</li> <li>d. Monitored family support briefings.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of (or information on) radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company organic reconnaissance element. The plan is issued with two-thirds planning time remaining for the element. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the element to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives and analyzes the mission and identifies all unit tasks.</li> <li>* 2. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) as soon as possible to subordinate leaders.</li> <li>* 3. The element leader and the operations section make a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance or survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air- or indirect-fire support, and medical support and coordinated the element plan with units in the area of operations, if necessary.</li> <li>c. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance/recovery/Class IX support for the platoon.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader orders units to start movement, if necessary.</li> <li>* 5. The element leader reconnoiters the operations area and performs a map reconnaissance as a minimum.</li> <li>* 6. The element leader completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 7. The element leader supervises preparations of the reconnaissance or survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support.</p> <p>8. The element conducts a tactical road march or executes a traveling movement to the reconnaissance or survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and or mission required.</li> <li>b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that marking signs were facing toward friendly areas. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and the physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission.</li> <li>c. Determined the limits of the contaminated area. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission.</li> </ul> <p>9. The headquarters (HQ), if prescribed by the mission, assists the reconnaissance or survey unit recovery operations.</p> <p>*10. The element leader or operations officer, if prescribed by the mission, debriefs the returning reconnaissance or survey units and forwards the acquired information to higher HQ in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format, if required.</p> <p>*11. The radiological element leaders record, collate, and submit individual and unit radiation exposure status (RES) readings to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-1220	Conduct Fire and Maneuver Operations
05-3-1239	Plan and Control Indirect Fire
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader checks the accountability and serviceability of the NBC defense equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the NBC detection equipment was issued to trained operators.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the NBC detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes.</li> <li>c. Identified equipment shortages.</li> <li>d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher HQ or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Donned masks and hoods within 15 seconds.</li> <li>b. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes.</li> </ul> <p>3. Soldiers take actions to protect themselves against an NBC attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up and used collective protective shelters (if available).</li> <li>b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability. Took the following into consideration:                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted?</li> <li>(2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> <li>(3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Collected and analyzed weather data. Took the following into consideration:                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was it day or night?</li> <li>(2) What were current weather conditions (see the chemical downwind message [CDM] or weather report)?</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) What were weather conditions 2, 4, and 6 hours in the future (see the CDM or weather report)? c. Analyzed the element status and mission. Took the following into consideration: (1) What was the mission? (2) What was the work rate? (3) How long did the work take? (4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit? (5) How long did it take to warn all the soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The element protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes after notification.</li> <li>b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms, left wrists, either their right or left ankles, and the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted MOPP field sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of their position.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters.</li> <li>b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover, consisting of a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.</b></p> <p>* 4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP4.</li> <li>b. Ensured that individual and element fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP4, and use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators of a chemical or biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the alarm (vocal or nonvocal).</li> <li>b. Ensured that soldiers put on their protective masks within 9 seconds.</li> <li>c. Assumed MOPP4 as soon as possible.</li> <li>d. Sought additional shelter, if available.</li> <li>e. Administered a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning (if applicable).</li> <li>f. Administered nerve agent antidotes to selves (if applicable).</li> <li>g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed.</li> </ul> <p>2. Soldiers take additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies.</li> <li>b. Monitored the area by testing it with detector kits.</li> <li>c. Applied prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.</li> </ul> <p>3. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted skin decontamination.</li> <li>b. Wiped down personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits.</li> <li>c. Conducted operator spray down of equipment.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that casualties were provided with medical care.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a strike warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike warning message.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Authenticated the call.</li> <li>b. Acknowledged the warning by returning the message.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Warned subordinate and affected units.</li> <li>b. Ensured that subordinates executed actions as directed.</li> </ul> <p>3. Soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions).</li> <li>b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment.</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> <li>g. Digital units ensured that the systems were prepared according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>h. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order.  2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Placed vehicles and equipment where the terrain shielding was best (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit SOP or other guidance. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available). i. Used field-expedient shelters.  3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continued periodic monitoring. b. Reported all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders prepare for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed individuals to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves.</li> <li>b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn-back dose rate).</li> <li>c. Ensured that radiac equipment operators checked the instruments.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, used sandbags on the vehicle floor).</li> <li>b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>c. Started continuous monitoring.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided stirring up dust.</li> <li>b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should have been buttoned up).</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>e. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-50)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke.</li> <li>b. Exploited threat smoke to conceal its own movements.</li> <li>c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat use of smoke.</li> <li>d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The unit employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit.</li> <li>b. Determined the wind direction and speed.</li> <li>c. Determined where to release the smoke and where it would travel.</li> <li>d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations.</li> <li>e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the smoke covered an area larger than the unit position.</li> <li>g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined what available target acquisition and guidance systems were effective in the smoke.</li> <li>b. Requested and used target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests a resupply of smoke munitions when required.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> <li>b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves.</li> <li>b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); and food and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles.</li> <li>c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout.</li> <li>d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Designated personnel monitor fallout.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments.</li> <li>b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible.</li> <li>c. Calculated the optimum time of exit.</li> <li>d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure.</li> <li>b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The unit leader submits reports according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack.</p> <p>a. Without warning, soldiers—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Closed their eyes immediately.</li> <li>(2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with their head toward the blast (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle).</li> <li>(3) Kept their heads and their faces down and helmets on.</li> <li>(4) Remained in a prone position until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling.</li> </ul> <p>b. With warning, soldiers—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the best available shelter, such as fighting positions or inside shelters.</li> <li>(2) Moved to the shelter.</li> <li>(3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation.</li> <li>(4) Kept clothing loosely fitted and their headgear on at all times.</li> <li>(5) Protected their eyes and minimized exposed skin areas.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Leaders reorganize the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reestablished the chain of command.</li> <li>b. Reestablished communications.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>d. Treated casualties.</li> <li>e. Reported casualties.</li> <li>f. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation.</li> <li>h. Implemented continuous monitoring.</li> <li>i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Initiated an area damage control plan, as required.</li> <li>k. Extinguished all fires.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. Leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational.</p> <p>4. Soldiers right overturned vehicles.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids. b. Performed operator maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.  5. Soldiers improve cover. a. Chose dense covering material. b. Covered in depth. c. Provided strong support. d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-11.11)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the element to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, element decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination element is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The contaminated unit determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from staff and subordinate leaders.</li> <li>b. Established decontamination priorities.</li> </ul> <p>2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request, as a minimum, included the—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Contaminated element designation.</li> <li>b. Contaminated element location.</li> <li>c. Contaminated element frequency and call sign.</li> <li>d. Time that the element became contaminated.</li> <li>e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that were contaminated.</li> <li>f. Type of contamination.</li> <li>g. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a element decontamination team).</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The contaminated unit leader coordinates with higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtain the necessary support.</li> <li>b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, a company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, or a decontamination squad or platoon).</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting units.</li> <li>d. Requested replacement MOPP gear.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>* 4. The contaminated unit leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided adequate overhead concealment.</li> <li>b. Provided good drainage.</li> <li>c. Provided easy access and exit (but off the main routes).</li> <li>d. Provided the proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash down.</li> <li>e. Provided an area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both the vehicle washdown site and the MOPP gear exchange site).</li> </ol> <p>5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested operational decontamination support.</li> <li>b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination.</li> <li>c. Established communications with the decontamination element.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the decontamination element knew the locations of the linkup and the selected decontamination sites.</li> </ol> <p>6. The contaminated element and supporting elements move to the decontamination site.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated.</li> <li>b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site by the contaminated element.</li> </ol> <p>7. The elements prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up the decontamination site. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The supporting decontamination element crew set up the vehicle washdown site.</li> <li>(2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle washdown site.</li> <li>(3) The remainder of the element prepared its equipment for decontamination.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.</li> <li>(2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: The contaminated element provides personnel to do this when the crews do not dismount.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper intervals).</li> <li>(b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up; for example, all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(4) Moved vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle washdown site.</li> <li>(5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site.</li> </ol>		
<p>* 8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination element supervises the operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that vehicle operators—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Washed vehicles.</p> <p>(1) Started at the top and worked down.</p> <p>(2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle.</p> <p>(3) Monitored water consumption.</p> <p>c. Moved to the assembly area (AA) after the vehicle wash down.</p> <p>d. Moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>9. The contaminated element conducts MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with supertropical bleach [STB] dry mix).</p> <p>b. Briefed MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed.</p> <p>c. Placed the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material).</p> <p>d. Exchanged MOPP gear using the buddy system.</p> <p>e. Moved soldiers to the AA after completing MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p><b>1. Ensure that the supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding.</b></p> <p><b>2. The supporting decontamination element cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination (using an NBC 4 report) to higher HQ.</b></p> <p>*10. Element leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.</p> <p>*11. The contaminated element leader reports to higher HQ.</p> <p>a. Reported the completion and location of the vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites.</p> <p>b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazards were detected.</p> <p>c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).</p> <p>12. The contaminated element continues the mission.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 5 (chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route.</li> <li>b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission.</li> <li>c. Obtained a route clearance and approval.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares to cross the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area.</li> <li>b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the march route or had strip maps.</li> <li>c. Ensured that all vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement).</li> <li>d. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>e. Attached M9 detector paper to soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible.</li> <li>c. Crossed the area as quickly and carefully as possible.</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit exits the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-75) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-90.1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment the unit is conducting a convoy. The operation order (OPORD) and the rules of engagement (ROE) provide guidance for the mission and actions to take upon contact. The enemy squad- to platoon-size force attacks the main body of the convoy. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages from the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage by taking immediate action. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader prepares for combat operations.  <b>NOTE: Digital units set stale settings to provide current friendly and enemy unit locations.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>b. Established radio communications with security elements.</li> <li>c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire).</li> <li>d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the movement, and ensured that the convoy had 360° coverage while moving.</li> <li>e. Designated en route rally points and the actions to be taken at those points.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route.</li> <li>g. Received an update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or the mission.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units receive updated intelligence information through the Force XXI Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or the Maneuver Control System (MCS).</b></p> <p>2. The element prepares for combat operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Air guards are present.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Ensured that weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition.</li> <li>c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all standing operating procedures (SOPs).</p> <p>3. The convoy reacts to enemy contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Scanned the area for the enemy and returned fire at identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Sought available cover.</li> <li>c. Maneuvered vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy and moved all unarmed vehicles to cover.</li> <li>d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy.</li> <li>e. Deployed the security teams and reported the situation to the element leader.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader develops the situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated fire and maneuver.</li> <li>b. Requested indirect-fire support.</li> <li>c. Sought information on the enemy strength, composition, and disposition.</li> <li>d. Evaluated the direction and volume of the enemy fire, confirmed or suspected enemy positions, and the terrain capacity for the masking forces.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader selects a course of action based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy flank.</li> <li>b. Conducted a frontal assault.</li> <li>c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver.</li> </ul> <p>6. The security element engages the enemy (within capabilities).</p> <p>* 7. The element leader reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>8. The element reorganizes and resumes its convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconstituted the security force.</li> <li>b. Treated and evacuated casualties.</li> <li>c. Reported casualties.</li> <li>d. Redistributed ammunition and equipment.</li> <li>e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission, without loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element recognizes the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the UXO by type.</li> <li>b. Identified the UXO by subgroup.</li> <li>c. Observed all safety precautions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evacuated the area as appropriate.</li> <li>b. Determined the appropriate action.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Avoided the UXO hazard.</li> <li>(2) Instituted protective measures.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose leaders to mark the area.</li> <li>b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The element marks the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked all the logical approach routes.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the UXO was visible from all markers.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The element reports the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated the UXO spot report.</li> <li>b. Determined the priority based on the current situation.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.30) (FM 3-19.4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An opposing forces (OPFOR) squad-size patrol attempts reconnaissance or intrusion into the command post (CP) perimeter. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element maintains 24-hour security in its assigned sector and is not surprised by the OPFOR.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader prepares a physical security plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled the entry of vehicles into the CP.</li> <li>b. Developed procedures for selecting and manning perimeter positions.</li> <li>c. Developed procedures for detecting and reporting OPFOR intrusion or observation of the CP perimeter.</li> <li>d. Controlled access to the element defensive areas.</li> <li>e. Established communications links between observation posts (OPs) and the reaction force.</li> <li>f. Developed procedures for initial response to ground attacks.</li> </ul> 2. The element operates a guard force. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established communications with the guard commander.</li> <li>b. Stopped unauthorized entry into restricted areas.</li> <li>c. Conducted random exterior patrols to find and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breached the CP perimeter.</li> </ul> 3. The element reacts to an OPFOR ground attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed preplanned positions.</li> <li>b. Denied intrusion into the CP perimeter.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)  
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)  
 (FM 44-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The element weapon control status (WCS) is weapons hold. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, and UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide personnel and equipment to limit vulnerability.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The unit achieves air situational awareness (SA) by monitoring with simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.</li> <li>c. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms.</li> <li>d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to an air attack.</li> <li>e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment.</li> <li>f. Manned observation posts (OPs), daytime or nighttime, to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Established a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if the equipment was available and operational.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged vehicles and equipment before moving out.</li> <li>c. Selected a column interval based on instructions, the mission, and the terrain.</li> <li>d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>e. Assigned soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360°.</li> <li>f. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</li> <li>g. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>h. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms.</li> </ul> <p>3. Element personnel use passive air defense measures when occupying or displacing a position.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order. b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns. c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360°, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement. d. Identified threat aerial platforms visually. e. Reported all aircraft actions to higher HQ. f. Established the vehicle order of precedence.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)

(FM 44-100)  
 (FM 44-80)

(FM 44-64)

(FM 44-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. Unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms. The element is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is weapons tight. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Organized the element to defensive positions.</li> <li>c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms.</li> <li>d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, consider the assigned mission and the tactical situation. The element must positively and visually identify aerial platforms before engaging with small arms, unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act.</b></p> <p><b>DANGER: MUNITIONS CANNOT DISTINGUISH BETWEEN FRIEND AND FOE. REVIEW ALL AIRSPACE CONTROL MEASURES. PERFORM ALL PRECAUTIONARY MEASURES TO ENSURE THAT THE MUNITIONS FIRED DO NOT CAUSE INJURY OR DEATH TO FRIENDLY FORCES OR DAMAGE TO ALLIED EQUIPMENT. EVEN COMPUTERIZED SYSTEMS REQUIRE CLOSE OBSERVATION.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Made the engagement decision.</li> <li>f. Engaged the element in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the element position.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement.</li> <li>h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>i. Sent the PIR to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES			GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p>1. Aim points for propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for helicopters.</p> <p>2. Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals about 91 meters.</p> <p>3. Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts.</p> <p>4. Establish preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position.</p> <p>5. Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire (a coordinated, high volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through) will achieve the desired results.</p>				
<p><b>TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS</b></p>				
Jet/cruise missile	COURSE Crossing	AIM POINT Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose		
Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose		
Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose		
Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose		
Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body		
Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body		
<p>j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position as directed by the unit commander.</p>				
<p>* 2. Leaders direct small arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target.</p> <p>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</p> <p>b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit.</p> <p>c. Moved vehicles to covered and concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion.</p> <p>d. Engaged nonattacking aircraft only as directed.</p> <p>e. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</p> <p>f. Reported all aerial platform actions to higher HQ.</p> <p>g. Prepared the element to engage on orders of the senior leader.</p> <p>h. Engaged the element (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms.</p> <p>i. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</p>				
<p>* 3. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit.</p> <p>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</p> <p>b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <p>c. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</p> <p>d. Ensured that soldiers assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors.</p> <p>e. Reported any aircraft action to higher HQ.</p>				

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Reported any casualties to higher HQ. g. Evaluated the situation and moved the element position as directed by the tactical situation or the TACSOP. * 4. The element leader or noncommissioned officers (NCOs) direct small arms air defense measures during the convoy movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to the shoulders of the road or off the road if possible. Turned to covered and concealed positions, if the terrain permitted.</li> <li>c. Maintained vehicle intervals or increased the interval or dispersion by using evasive driving techniques.</li> <li>d. Ordered the element to dismount and take up firing positions.</li> <li>e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking.</li> <li>f. Identified aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Engaged the element in attacking aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> <li>h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Reported any casualties to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)  
 (AR 385-10) (FM 3-0) (FM 7-0)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is deployed, performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Leaders and soldiers are aware of potential safety problems when conducting the task. The element trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger element members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for specified and implied missions (tasks).</li> <li>b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process.</li> <li>c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the mission or conditions changed.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent, based on the stated training objective.</li> <li>b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents.</li> <li>c. Described the operation in terms of high, medium, or low risk.</li> <li>d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The commander (or leaders) eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk.</li> <li>b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards.</li> <li>c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment.</li> <li>d. Briefed the elements before all operations.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element carries out safety procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received safety briefings before all operations.</li> <li>b. Practiced the safety procedures during all mission rehearsals.</li> <li>c. Made on-spot safety corrections.</li> </ul>		
<p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p><b>1. Safety is a part of realism, and realism includes building safety into the training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war (refer to Field Manual [FM] 7-0).</b></p> <p><b>2. FM 3-0 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
"risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum extent possible ensures winning the battle. Risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific period of time or number of operational cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** S1 Section  
Command Section

**TASK:** Conduct Administrative Operations (05-2-1007)  
 (FM 12-6) (DA FORM 1155) (DA FORM 1156)  
 (DA FORM 2166-8) (DA FORM 2166-8-1) (DA FORM 67-9)  
 (FM 21-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is operating in a tactical environment with replacement personnel arriving. The company headquarters (HQ) has all assigned personnel; equipment; and required forms, manuals, and standing operating procedures (SOPs). Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company integrates the replacement personnel. The company prepares and submits personnel reports and actions while sustaining operations and providing for the discipline, health, welfare, and morale of all assigned personnel. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander integrates replacement personnel and assigns them to subordinate elements within the company.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Oriented replacement personnel before their assignment.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the unit mission and the current situation.</li> <li>(2) Explained the chain-of-command procedures.</li> <li>(3) Explained the warning system, safety, and security procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Assigned replacement personnel on a priority basis.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Company personnel prepare the personnel daily summary (PDS).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated the subordinate element data.</li> <li>b. Prepared the PDS.</li> <li>c. Submitted the PDS to the battalion personnel and administration center (PAC).</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Company personnel process Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1155 and 1156.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Posted and maintained the unit casualty record.</li> <li>b. Posted and maintained DA Form 1156.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Company leaders in the chain of command review and verify the completed DA Forms 1155, and submit the reports to the battalion PAC.</li> <li>* 5. Company leaders initiate actions to request awards or promotions.</li> <li>* 6. Company leaders coordinate individual requests for administrative actions requiring approval from higher HQ.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adhered to the local battalion PAC policies.</li> <li>b. Relayed all duty statuses and other actions to the battalion PAC for processing.</li> <li>c. Coordinated all finance actions through the battalion PAC and the finance office.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Approved or disapproved personal administrative actions (pass, leave, and emergency leave).</p> <p>* 7. Company leaders initiate judicial and nonjudicial punishment actions.</p> <p>    a. Drafted a summary of the incident or violation.</p> <p>    b. Obtained and assembled investigation reports and witness statements.</p> <p>    c. Reviewed the incident or violation to determine the best course of action (COA).</p> <p>    d. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</p> <p>* 8. Company leaders monitor personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures.</p> <p>    a. Ensured that the means were available for obtaining assistance (according to the SOP).</p> <p>    b. Coordinated with higher HQ for morale and personnel support.</p> <p>* 9. The company commander initiates DA Form 67-9.</p> <p>*10. The platoon leader/sergeant initiates DA Forms 2166-8 and 2166-8-1.</p> <p>    a. Drafted work sheets for the noncommissioned officer (NCO) checklist/record and the noncommissioned officer evaluation report (NCOER).</p> <p>    b. Forwarded the draft work sheets to the battalion PAC.</p> <p>    c. Maintained the appropriate privacy measures during all stages of the process.</p> <p>*11. Company leaders coordinate the medical and dental treatment of all assigned personnel (for nonbattle injuries).</p> <p>    a. Ensured that the procedures for medical and dental assistance were coordinated with higher HQ.</p> <p>    b. Adhered to the medical or dental evaluation of the medical or dental authority.</p> <p>*12. Company leaders coordinate for chaplain assistance.</p> <p>    a. Coordinated the presentation of religious services.</p> <p>    b. Advised personnel on how to obtain chaplain assistance.</p> <p>*13. Company leaders coordinate for Red Cross assistance.</p> <p>    a. Advised personnel on how to obtain Red Cross assistance.</p> <p>    b. Recommended personnel for Red Cross assistance.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Command Section

**TASK:** Maintain a Geospatial Database (05-4-1373)  
 (FM 5-33) (AR 380-5) (FM 34-25)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a mission directive to maintain a topographic database. Topographic databases include survey, reproduction, cartographic, and terrain information. A table of organization and equipment (TOE) is available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element reviews, revises, and updates a topographic database as outlined by the mission directive.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives new source material. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the classification of the source material.</li> <li>b. Determined the source, accuracy, and reliability of the source material.</li> <li>c. Directed the element to update an existing database.</li> </ul> 2. The element updates the existing database.                     3. The element catalogs and files database materials for easy access. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cataloged by country code.</li> <li>b. Cataloged by subject (for example, railroad, bridge, soil, and hydrology).</li> <li>c. Cataloged by geographic area.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Geographic coordinates.</li> <li>(2) Universal transverse Mercator (UTM) coordinates.</li> <li>(3) Map sheet number, series, and name.</li> <li>(4) Trigonometric lists and related data.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Filed the database so that it could be removed quickly and easily.</li> </ul> 4. The element performs database maintenance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed periodic inventories according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). Ensured that the database catalog reflected an accurate, current status of materials.</li> <li>b. Purged the database when new source materials were acquired.</li> <li>c. Maintained and controlled classified and unclassified products according to Army Regulation (AR) 380-5 and the unit SOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section

**TASK:** Deploy a Geospatial Database (05-4-1374)  
 (FM 5-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a mission directive to deploy a topographic database. Topographic databases include reproduction, survey, cartographic, and terrain information. A table of organization and equipment (TOE) is available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element deploys a topographic database as required by the mission directive.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader determines source materials to be deployed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the survey data cards.</li> <li>b. Identified the map reproducibles.</li> <li>c. Identified the reports.</li> <li>d. Identified the imagery.</li> </ul> 2. The element checks the database. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured the correct classification.</li> <li>b. Checked the area of interest coverage.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the database was current.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the database was accurate.</li> </ul> 3. The element moves and files the database. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Allowed easy access to the database.</li> <li>b. Prevented damage to the database during movement.</li> <li>c. Handled classified databases according to security regulations.</li> </ul> * 4. The element leader informs superiors and the support unit commander of the database status. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disclosed deficiencies in databases.</li> <li>b. Reported the status of database readiness.</li> <li>c. Specified special handling due to classification.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-260-4412	Disseminate Survey Data
052-260-4709	Disseminate Materials from a Deployable Data Base

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** S3 Section  
Command Section

**TASK:** Perform a Geospatial Collection Effort (05-4-1376)  
(FM 5-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a mission directive to perform a topographic collection. A table of organization and equipment (TOE) is available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element performs a topographic collection as required by the mission directive.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader determines the scope of source material requirements for the unit database.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Researched mission directives and operation plans (OPLANs).</li> <li>b. Researched geographic areas of responsibilities.</li> <li>c. Researched other pertinent documents.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader evaluates the database.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the database was complete.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the database was current.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the database was accurate.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Element members order, requisition, or request necessary source materials.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used proper procurement catalogs, publications, and forms.</li> <li>b. Submitted orders, requisitions, or requests through appropriate channels.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader directs the topographic collection effort.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established and maintained the system to track, monitor, and follow up on active source material requests.</li> <li>b. Established automatic distribution accounts for source materials that required continuous update.</li> <li>c. Visited agencies or sections, if possible, to collect source material for a time-critical mission.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the collection effort with other sections or units, as required.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section

**TASK:** Perform Quality Control Measures on Geospatial Products (05-4-1377)  
 (FM 5-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a mission directive to produce topographic products. A table of organization and equipment (TOE) is available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element conducts quality control measures on topographic products as outlined by the mission directive.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader analyzes the mission directive.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the request was a valid task.</li> <li>b. Confirmed that the unit had capabilities and materials to meet mission directive requirements.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the requester on details of the project to ensure total understanding of the expected product.</li> <li>d. Determined and established priority of the project if not given in the initial directive.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader plans the project.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the project flow.</li> <li>b. Ensured that materials needed to complete the project were on hand or ordered and received before starting the project.</li> <li>c. Prepared and issued a production work order.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Element members provide topographic products.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Collected database materials.</li> <li>b. Provided database materials to the company or the unit.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader directs production.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored the project status.</li> <li>b. Maintained a production schedule and reports.</li> <li>c. Coordinated activities of subordinate units.</li> <li>d. Informed higher headquarters of the status.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. Element members perform quality control measures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed quality control checks at critical points.</li> <li>b. Distributed products as required by the production work order.</li> <li>c. Maintained an after-action file of projects.</li> <li>d. Forwarded copies of an after-action report (AAR), if required.</li> <li>e. Updated the database and returned materials.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-260-4703	Perform Quality Control Checks of Survey Data

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
S3 Section

**TASK:** Perform Production Management on Geospatial Products (05-4-1378)  
(FM 5-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a mission directive to produce topographic products. A table of organization and equipment (TOE) is available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element performs quality control measures to ensure that topographic products meet the requirements stated in the mission directive.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader examines the mission directive. a. Ensured that information was complete. b. Ensured that sufficient guidance was contained for completing the project. * 2. The element leader inspects database materials for completeness. * 3. The element leader implements a quality control plan. a. Established critical points to perform quality control checks. b. Coordinated with the requester to review the product at critical points. 4. Element members perform quality control checks at established critical points. a. Maintained documentation of quality control inspections during all phases of the production cycle. b. Ensured that quality control documentation was included in after-action project files and project history.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-260-3701	Prepare a Project Progress Report
052-260-4704	Check a Project Progress Report
052-260-4717	Perform Staff Position Duties Essential To Unit Mission

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)  
 (FM 8-51) (FM 22-51)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Combat health support (CHS) operations have commenced. Element personnel are deployed in support of higher headquarters (HQ) operations. The sleep plan and the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) to manage battle fatigue (BF) soldiers have been developed. Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period, causing stressful situations for personnel. The commander has directed that procedures for managing battlefield stress be implemented. Simplified collective-protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

**NOTE:** Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some military occupational specialty (MOS) specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS specific medical tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress prevention implementation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander and leaders perform stress prevention actions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>c. Briefed the leaders' intention to all unit personnel.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning the unit missions, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Instituted an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors.</li> <li>g. Informed personnel of the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander and leaders implement the sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities.</li> <li>b. Adjusted the sleep plan as dictated by the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Enforced the sleep plan according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alternated cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required.</li> <li>b. Rotated unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Adjusted task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.</p> <p>* 4. Leaders implement stress coping and management techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Integrated new unit members into the unit immediately.</li> <li>b. Assisted soldiers in resolving home front problems.</li> <li>c. Implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among soldiers and leaders.</li> <li>d. Provided instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel before deployment.</li> <li>e. Conducted after-action debriefings.</li> <li>f. Scheduled a critical-event debriefing after any traumatic event according to Field Manual (FM) 22-51.</li> <li>g. Conducted unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The commander and leaders implement stress control techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases.</li> <li>b. Assigned soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks.</li> <li>c. Directed personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers.</li> <li>d. Referred soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to the supporting medical-treatment facility (MTF) for evaluation.</li> <li>e. Reintegrated return-to-duty (RTD) soldiers into their specific element.</li> </ul> <p>6. Element personnel employ stress prevention measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a positive attitude concerning the unit mission, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>b. Complied with the commander's sleep plan.</li> <li>c. Identified other soldiers with signs of stress or BF.</li> <li>d. Provided immediate buddy aid support.</li> <li>e. Reported signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to their immediate supervisor.</li> <li>f. Accepted new unit members immediately.</li> <li>g. Practiced relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places.</li> <li>h. Participated in buddy systems and after-action debriefings.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** S1 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-27-1) (FM 10-27-2) (FM 10-500-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Since the normal supply support transportation is unavailable, supplies and equipment are requested by airdrop.

**NOTE:** An airdrop of supplies and equipment may be preplanned or immediate. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company derigs and recovers supplies, equipment, and rigging gear. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element requests supplies and equipment by airdrop.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the required supplies and equipment.</li> <li>b. Identified the drop zone (DZ).</li> <li>c. Determined the date and time of the airdrop request.</li> <li>d. Forwarded the request for a preplanned or immediate airdrop to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element commander and the element leaders develop the airdrop supply and equipment receipt plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a recovery officer and a safety officer.</li> <li>b. Verified the delivery time and location with the S4.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the survey of the DZ or area of operations (AO) with the pathfinders, the combat control team (CCT), or the DZ support team (DZST) through the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> <li>d. Prepared the recovery and alternate plans.</li> <li>e. Identified the number of people, equipment, and vehicles required for the recovery of supplies and equipment.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the transportation and materials-handling-equipment (MHE) support with the S4.</li> <li>g. Briefed personnel on the tactical situation and the recovery and alternative plans.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The company receives supplies and equipment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured the DZ or AO.</li> <li>b. Derigged supplies and equipment.</li> <li>c. Recorded shortages.</li> <li>d. Identified the damaged items.</li> <li>e. Evacuated supplies and equipment.</li> <li>f. Retrieved the airdrop rigging equipment.</li> <li>g. Buried or destroyed the airdrop rigging equipment that could not be removed.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Inspected the DZ to make certain that no serviceable airdrop equipment was left behind. i. Forwarded the airdrop equipment to the nearest collection point or other location as directed by the S4. j. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to the S2 or S3 and the S4.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Communication Section

**TASK:** Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A)  
(TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element occupies a defensive position and is directed to establish wire communications. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element installs wire, a switchboard (SB), and telephones to establish and maintain communications with subordinate elements no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Designated personnel operate a telephone SB.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the SB22/PT for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-262-12. If the packing list was not available, used the end-item list to check the components.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, a packing box, or a ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, a shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from the elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side with nameplate up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment according to the grounding techniques specified in TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>e. Performed the SB preoperation procedures according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>g. Connected local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Designated personnel install the internal wiring and telephones.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the field wire or cable before installation.</li> <li>b. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the platoon leader.</li> <li>c. Secured the field wire at starting points and at changes of direction to reduce strain.</li> <li>d. Used the proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>e. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>f. Enhanced concealment using the terrain and vegetation.</li> <li>g. Ensured that the overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Designated personnel operate the telephone SB.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the SB22/PT by performing communication checks with all users to ensure that the SB was operational.</li> <li>b. Processed calls.</li> <li>c. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the telephone SB according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Designated personnel inform the platoon leader when wire communications are established.  5. Designated personnel perform PMCS on the field wire or cable lines. a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field wire or cable lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel Voice Radio Station (AM) (11-5-0101.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-18) (FM 20-3) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The team has been given signal operation instructions (SOI) and signal supplemental instructions (SSI) extracts, a current key list or appropriate keying device (if secure speech equipment is authorized), a radio net diagram, a map, and the grid coordinates of the net control station (NCS) and other stations. Situational hazards such as a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) environment; limited visibility; weather; and opposing forces (OPFOR) may exist. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The radio is installed at a designated location according to the times in the operation plan (OPLAN) or the operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The team chief selects the site for the equipment placement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the site for the antenna masts.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the location provided the best possible cover and concealment.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the location provided the best possible physical security.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the location provided access to at least one escape route from the OPFOR.</li> <li>e. Established and maintained physical security or control of communications security (COMSEC) materials and documents containing essential elements of friendly information (EEFI).</li> </ul> <p>2. The team installs the radio set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked the set before operation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that grounding connections were proper.</li> <li>c. Ensured that cable connections were proper.</li> <li>d. Extracted the appropriate call signals, suffixes, and frequency from the SOI and the SSI.</li> <li>e. Completed all necessary presets.</li> <li>f. Loaded encryption devices.</li> </ul> <p>3. The team places the radio set into operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented preliminary starting procedures.</li> <li>b. Conducted starting procedures.</li> <li>c. Conducted tuning procedures.</li> <li>d. Entered the radio net and correctly authenticated.</li> <li>e. Performed during-operation, preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> </ul> <p>4. The team extends the range of the radio station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed a doublet antenna.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Oriented the antenna broadside to the most distant station.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the service selector switch was in the standby position.</li> <li>d. Accomplished the transition from the whip antenna to the doublet antenna with minimum interruption of service.</li> <li>e. Connected the antenna lead-in to the radio set.</li> <li>f. Referred to the doublet frequency chart for the antenna load and tune presets.</li> <li>g. Tuned the radio set to the doublet antenna.</li> <li>h. Conducted a communications check with a distant station.</li> </ul> <p>5. The team installs the radio set at a remote site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared a remote control grip for operation.</li> <li>b. Connected local control to the radio set.</li> <li>c. Installed field wire to the remote site.</li> <li>d. Connected the remote control to the field wire.</li> <li>e. Conducted an operational check.</li> </ul> <p>6. The team installs the generator set, if required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted preoperational PMCS.</li> <li>b. Grounded the generator set.</li> <li>c. Connected the power cable.</li> <li>d. Performed starting procedures.</li> <li>e. Started the generator set.</li> <li>f. Accomplished the transition to generator power with minimum interruption of communications.</li> <li>g. Constructed a sound barrier and screening system to muffle noise and minimize the heat signal.</li> <li>h. Established the fire point.</li> <li>i. Established the fuel point.</li> </ul> <p>7. The team employs preventive electronic countercountermeasures (ECCM).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Minimized transmission.</li> <li>b. Transmitted quickly and precisely.</li> <li>c. Used an antenna with the shortest feasible range.</li> <li>d. Used a directional antenna.</li> <li>e. Selected a site that masked the transmitted signal from enemy interception.</li> <li>f. Practiced the proper radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures.</li> <li>g. Encrypted all EEFI data.</li> <li>h. Used COMSEC equipment when available.</li> </ul> <p>8. The team implements remedial ECCM techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recognized jamming or interference.</li> <li>b. Determined if the interference was from an internal or external source.</li> <li>c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional.</li> <li>d. Notified the immediate supervisor of suspected jamming.</li> <li>e. Continued to operate.</li> <li>f. Adjusted or changed antennas.</li> <li>g. Used an alternate communications route.</li> <li>h. Requested a frequency change.</li> <li>i. Submitted a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report.</li> </ul> <p>9. The team assumes NCS duties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Challenged and required that stations in the net reply as required by the SOI and SSI.</li> <li>b. Opened and closed the net.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Controlled the entry and departure of stations. d. Monitored the net and corrected errors in operating procedures. e. Imposed or lifted the station listening silence. f. Controlled a directed net. g. Passed all interference reports to the signal officer as soon as possible.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Communication Section

**TASK:** Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)  
 (TM 11-5805-294-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The internal communications network is set up according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable or wire installation plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain.</li> <li>b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines.</li> <li>d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task.</li> <li>e. Prepared a telephone traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system.</li> <li>f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI) or the standing signal instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone system users.</li> </ul> <p>2. The section installs a telephone switchboard (SB).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from adverse elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side with the nameplate up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>e. Performed SB preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to the traffic diagram.</li> <li>g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ul> <p>3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed the distribution box.</li> <li>b. Tested the field cable or wire before installing.</li> <li>c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader.</li> <li>d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>f. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment.</li> <li>h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> <li>i. Finished the line route map indicating the routes of wire lines, SBs, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction.</li> </ul> <p>4. The section operates the telephone SB.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the SB to ensure that it was operational.</li> <li>b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties.</li> <li>c. Processed calls.</li> <li>d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required.</li> <li>e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the SB according to the appropriate TM.</li> </ul> <p>5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable or wire lines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field cable or wire lines.</li> <li>b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S1 Section

**TASK:** Report Casualties (12-1-0403.05-T01A)  
 (FM 12-6) (AR 600-8-1) (DA FORM 1594)  
 (TC 12-17)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Soldiers have been wounded, killed, captured, or are missing. Casualty reports are arriving from supported units. The element is equipped with the Tactical Army Combat Service Support Computer System (TACCS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualty information is processed and provided daily to the supporting personnel service company (PSC) and parent brigade. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section collects casualty information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged casualty information on Department of the Army (DA) Form 1594.</li> <li>b. Completed missing information.</li> <li>c. Verified the data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S1 section processes the casualty data.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Posted the battle roster.</li> <li>b. Initiated the casualty feeder report.</li> <li>c. Printed the casualty feeder report.</li> <li>d. Backed up the feeder report file.</li> <li>e. Restored the feeder files.</li> <li>f. Merged the feeder reports for task force (TF) units.</li> <li>g. Prepared the transmittal letters.</li> <li>h. Prepared the letters of condolence and sympathy and forwarded them to the division Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel) (G1) or separate brigade S1.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The personnel staff noncommissioned officer (PSNCO) forwards the casualty data.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed casualty feeder reports for accuracy and completeness with the data entered on DA Form 1594.</li> <li>b. Reconciled the casualty log with the strength accounting data.</li> <li>c. Corrected any deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to the servicing PSC.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The battalion S1 disseminates casualty information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided data to the battalion command group and staff.</li> <li>b. Coordinated religious rites with the chaplain.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
16-1-1001.05-T01A	Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S1 Section

**TASK:** Perform Strength Accounting (12-1-0404.05-T01A)  
(FM 12-6) (FM 7-22.7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Personnel losses and gains have occurred. The daily personnel status report (PSR) is required. The element is equipped with the Tactical Army Combat Service Support Computer System (TACCS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion strength data for supported elements recorded on the PSR are within plus or minus 5 percent of the actual present-for-duty strength of the company. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section collects strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged incoming situation reports (SITREPs) and messages from subordinate units.</li> <li>b. Spot-checked strength reports for missing information.</li> <li>c. Collected other personnel strength information from the tactical operations center (TOC) and the battalion aid station.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The Personnel and Administration Center (PAC) updates the Command and Control Strength Reporting System (C2SRS).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updated the battle roster.</li> <li>b. Entered individual changes.</li> <li>c. Posted the commander's narrative guidance.</li> <li>d. Printed the personnel status (PS) and personnel requirements report (PRR).</li> <li>e. Forwarded the PS and PRR to the personnel staff noncommissioned officer (PSNCO).</li> <li>f. Created a TACCS floppy diskette of the PS and PRR.</li> <li>g. Printed an updated battle roster as required and provided it to the companies.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The PSNCO reviews the C2SRS.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the PS and PRR for completeness and accuracy.</li> <li>b. Cross-checked the primary military occupational specialty (PMOS) or duty military occupational specialty (DMOS) report against the PRR.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the reports to the PAC supervisor.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The PAC supervisor forwards strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided data to the supporting personnel service company (PSC).</li> <li>b. Provided data to the brigade S1.</li> <li>c. Provided data to the S1 section of attached units.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The S1 disseminates strength data.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the command group and staff daily.</li> <li>b. Supported the staff decision planning process with personnel strength information.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S1 Section

**TASK:** Conduct Replacement Operations (12-1-0405.05-T01A)  
 (FM 12-6) (DA FORM 3955) (DA FORM 647)  
 (DA PAM 600-8-2) (DA PAM 600-8-23)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Replacements arrive in the battalion area. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The unit is equipped with the Tactical Army Combat Service Support Computer System (TACCS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) processes and transports replacements to their units within 4 hours of their arrival. The digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The Personnel and Administration Center (PAC) conducts administrative processing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed assignment orders.</li> <li>b. Welcomed soldiers to the unit.</li> <li>c. Assigned soldiers to units according to the commander's priorities.</li> <li>d. Signed soldiers in on Department of the Army (DA) Form 647.</li> <li>e. Collected medical and dental records.</li> <li>f. Turned in medical and dental records to the battalion aid station.</li> <li>g. Added names to the battle roster.</li> <li>h. Prepared Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) input.</li> <li>i. Completed DA Form 3955.</li> <li>j. Forwarded DA Form 3955 to the servicing postal activity.</li> </ul> * 2. The S1 or PAC supervisor processes soldiers into the command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the mission and the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Coordinated mess and medical support.</li> <li>c. Inspected soldiers for combat-critical clothing shortages.</li> <li>d. Coordinated equipment issue.</li> <li>e. Coordinated transportation to subordinate units.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S1 Section

**TASK:** Process Personnel and Administrative Actions (12-1-0406.05-T01A)  
 (AR 25-50) (AR 27-10) (DA FORM 31)  
 (DA FORM 638) (FM 12-6) (FM 7-22.7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is performing its combat mission. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Requests for personnel actions are being received. Distribution, Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ) actions, and hometown news releases are being received. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Personnel actions are processed as soon as possible in keeping with the tactical situation in a manner that precludes adverse morale implications. Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The personnel and administration center (PAC) collects requests from supported companies and higher headquarters (HQ).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged receipt of all actions.</li> <li>b. Verified actions to ensure their validity and need.</li> <li>c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The PAC processes information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prioritized all personnel actions.</li> <li>b. Prepared appropriate personnel forms.</li> <li>c. Reviewed actions for accuracy and completeness.</li> <li>d. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data.</li> <li>e. Advised soldiers.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) or PAC supervisor processes actions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed technical and administrative reviews.</li> <li>b. Corrected minor errors.</li> <li>c. Approved or recommended approval.</li> <li>d. Dispatched actions to higher HQ for further processing.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The S1 or PAC supervisor disseminates information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the commander on the status of personnel actions.</li> <li>b. Informed subordinate companies and soldiers on the status of personnel actions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The PAC processes award recommendations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed recommendations for awards.</li> <li>b. Processed Department of the Army (DA) Forms 638.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the recommendations to the approving authority.</li> <li>d. Suspended a copy of the recommendation for award.</li> <li>e. Forwarded approved awards to the unit commander for presentation at an appropriate ceremony (when the situation permitted).</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The PAC processes leave requests.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Processed DA Forms 31.</li> <li>b. Maintained a leave control log.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Forwarded required copies of DA Form 31 to the Finance Support Command (FSC), as appropriate.</p> <p>7. The PAC processes standard installation/division personnel system (SIDPERS) input.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared input.</li> <li>b. Reviewed transactions for accuracy and completeness.</li> <li>c. Obtained required signatures for transmittal.</li> </ul> <p>8. The PAC manages the evaluation reporting system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated evaluation report shells.</li> <li>b. Established an internal suspense for each evaluation report.</li> <li>c. Forwarded evaluation work sheets to the appropriate subordinate units.</li> <li>d. Reviewed returned evaluation reports for completeness and accuracy.</li> <li>e. Prepared evaluation reports, if required.</li> <li>f. Returned completed evaluation reports for the required signatures.</li> <li>g. Checked returned evaluation reports to ensure that signatures and dates were correct.</li> <li>h. Forwarded completed evaluation reports to the personnel service company (PSC).</li> </ul> <p>9. The PAC provides administrative support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a suspense control.</li> <li>b. Typed all standing operating procedures (SOPs) and correspondence for the battalion commander, the executive officer (XO), and the units (including memorandums, letters, endorsements, accident reports, and forms).</li> <li>c. Operated reproduction equipment.</li> <li>d. Maintained reproduction equipment.</li> <li>e. Picked up distribution from higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Sorted distribution.</li> <li>g. Secured distribution.</li> <li>h. Processed distribution from staff sections and subordinate and attached units.</li> <li>i. Maintained required blank forms and publications.</li> </ul> <p>10. The PAC processes promotion recommendations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified soldier eligibility.</li> <li>b. Forwarded a list of names of eligible soldiers to the subordinate units.</li> <li>c. Forwarded promotion recommendations to the appropriate promotion authority.</li> <li>d. Verified proper distribution of promotion orders (individual, personnel, and finance).</li> <li>e. Initiated further command actions when required.</li> </ul> <p>11. The PAC processes letters of reprimand.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the facts that support the imposition of the letter of reprimand.</li> <li>b. Prepared the letter of reprimand for the commander's signature.</li> <li>c. Prepared the notification letter to the individual advising him of his rights.</li> </ul> <p>12. The PAC processes letters of indebtedness.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gathered all documents and facts bearing on the claimed indebtedness of the soldier.</li> <li>b. Prepared the letter for the commander's signature to the agency or individual claiming the debt.</li> <li>c. Dispatched the letter to the agency or individual.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Followed up, if necessary.</li> <li>e. Referred the soldier to the division Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) or brigade legal advisor for legal assistance and preparation of response to debtors.</li> </ul> <p>13. The PAC processes letters of nonsupport.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the type of letter to be prepared based on all facts gathered.</li> <li>b. Determined all information bearing on the claimed nonsupport by the soldier.</li> <li>c. Prepared the letter for the commander's or soldier's signature.</li> <li>d. Dispatched the letter to the agency or individual claiming nonsupport.</li> </ul> <p>14. The PAC processes other adverse actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all facts and supporting documents were available.</li> <li>b. Prepared the required administrative documents.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the packet to the appropriate authority for action.</li> </ul> <p>15. The PAC provides financial assistance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Processed related documents.</li> <li>b. Distributed net pay advice (NPA) and leave and earnings statements (LESSs).</li> <li>c. Resolved less-complicated pay problems.</li> <li>d. Answered pay-related inquires.</li> <li>e. Provided liaison and coordination with the supporting FSC.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** S1 Section

**TASK:** Provide Legal Support (12-1-0410.05-T01A)

(AR 27-10)

(AR 15-6)

(AR 190-47)

(AR 27-1)

(AR 27-20)

(AR 600-20)

(AR 600-8-2)

(AR 600-85)

(AR 635-200)

(DD FORM 457)

(DOD REG 5500.7-R)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is deployed and conducting combat operations. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Requests for legal support have been received. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) provides legal support to the command according to the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ), other laws and directives, the Manual for Courts-Martial (MCM), and the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The battalion legal noncommissioned officer (NCO) or specialist provides the battalion commander with the current status of legal matters, to include—                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Courts-martial actions and dispositions.</li> <li>b. Nonjudicial proceedings.</li> <li>c. Administrative separation actions.</li> <li>d. Formal and informal investigations.</li> <li>e. Other adverse administrative actions, such as bars to reenlistment or letters of reprimand.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The battalion legal NCO or specialist assists subordinate commanders and soldiers.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with subordinate units to assist in the disposition of court and board actions.</li> <li>b. Prepared charge sheets, allied papers, confinement orders, and the commander's actions.</li> <li>c. Recorded and prepared proceedings of Article 32(b) investigations (Department of Defense [DD] Form 457).</li> <li>d. Prepared records of nonjudicial punishment.</li> <li>e. Reviewed records of nonjudicial punishment forwarded by subordinate units.</li> <li>f. Processed appeals of nonjudicial punishment and monitored posting of records to personnel and financial files.</li> <li>g. Prepared notifications of administrative separation.</li> <li>h. Recorded and prepared records of board proceedings related to administrative separations.</li> <li>i. Prepared, processed, and monitored the administrative separation actions.</li> <li>j. Recorded and prepared records of trial for special courts-martial.</li> <li>k. Prepared and processed records of trial for summary courts-martial.</li> <li>l. Prepared, processed, and monitored the suspension of favorable personnel actions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The battalion legal NCO or specialist coordinates with the brigade legal NCO for legal services from the Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) or brigade legal advisor.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Acted as a liaison between subordinate units and the SJA section.</li> <li>b. Assisted the legal assistance officer in preparing powers of attorney, wills, and other legal assistance documents.</li> <li>c. Assisted the claims judge advocate with claims investigations and assisted in the preparation of claims forms, to include forwarding them for appropriate disposition.</li> <li>d. Forwarded documents for review by administrative law and contract law personnel.</li> <li>e. Assisted judge advocates with military justice, international law, and operational law training.</li> <li>f. Assisted the trial counsel in preparing pretrial, trial, and posttrial documents.</li> <li>g. Arranged for witnesses and other necessary personnel to be present at the courts-martial.</li> <li>h. Assisted in processing of posttrial prisoners for confinement.</li> </ul> <p>4. The battalion legal NCO or specialist coordinates with the trial defense service for defense counsel services.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Arranged for advice by counsel for nonjudicial punishment proceedings.</li> <li>b. Arranged for consultation with counsel for administrative separations or representation.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The battalion commander administers the UCMJ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of violations of the UCMJ.</li> <li>b. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</li> <li>c. Returned charges to the subordinate commander for other disposition.</li> <li>d. Referred charges to trial by summary court or forwarded charges for trial by courts-martial.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The battalion commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other than judicial or nonjudicial proceedings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated, forwarded, approved, or returned letters of reprimand/admonition.</li> <li>b. Approved, disapproved, or forwarded administrative separations.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** S1 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.40) (AR 190-8) (DD FORM 2745)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates the EPWs according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T) method. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element searches the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed weapons and documents that had intelligence value.</li> <li>b. Returned the personal items of no military intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment.</li> <li>c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property that was taken.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The element segregates the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, desertion status, civilian status, nationality, and ideology.</li> <li>b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element silences the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented the EPW leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevented the EPWs from planning an escape.</li> <li>c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The element safeguards the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</li> <li>b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Treated the EPWs humanely.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>b. Attached Part A to the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Retained Part B for the unit records.</li> <li>d. Attached Part C to the property.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs.</li> <li>b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Exploited the intelligence information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** S1 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A)  
 (FM 4-30.3) (AR 220-1) (AR 385-40)  
 (AR 700-138) (AR 750-1) (DA PAM 738-750)  
 (FM 9-43-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element maintenance personnel receive requests to repair inoperative organic equipment. The element maintenance area is established. The required tools, equipment, and personnel are available. Operators are performing preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the equipment. Recovery operations with injured operators on board may be required. The element tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Element maintenance is a continuous task and is performed simultaneously with other internal support and operational tasks. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element vehicles and equipment are maintained according to the appropriate technical manuals (TMs) and the commander's guidance. Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element commander directs the element maintenance program.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervised the implementation of the unit maintenance program to ensure compliance with the commander's guidance and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Identified the company operational levels by reviewing the vehicle and equipment status reports.</li> <li>c. Approved the use of controlled exchanges when the required repair parts were not available.</li> <li>d. Approved repairs using the battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR) procedures when the established repair procedures could not be used.</li> <li>e. Checked the materiel condition status report (MCSR) for accuracy and completeness.</li> <li>f. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems to minimize their impact on element readiness.</li> <li>g. Coordinated the resolution of maintenance problems with the battalion maintenance officer (BMO).</li> <li>h. Forwarded the MCSR to the BMO.</li> <li>i. Conducted periodic inspections of personnel and equipment to ensure that the safety program was enforced.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Section leaders supervise operator maintenance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored PMCS performance for compliance with the appropriate TMs and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>b. Inspected personnel and equipment to ensure compliance with the safety program.</li> <li>c. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the motor sergeant.</li> <li>d. Monitored the supply of the repair parts for platoon equipment to ensure that the repair parts were on order.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant.</li> <li>f. Maintained the maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment.</li> <li>g. Provided input for the MCSR to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>3. Company personnel perform operator maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed PMCS according to the appropriate TMs.</li> <li>b. Notified the supervisor of any maintenance problems beyond the operator's capability.</li> <li>c. Requested approval for the BDAR through the platoon leader when the established repair procedures could not be used.</li> <li>d. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual.</li> <li>e. Assisted the unit maintenance personnel with the repairs and services.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The motor sergeant supervises the unit maintenance personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organized the element maintenance personnel to perform element maintenance activities.</li> <li>b. Supervised The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS) and the prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for completeness and accuracy.</li> <li>c. Supervised the repair and the inspection procedures to ensure that they were done safely and according to the appropriate references.</li> <li>d. Requested approval for the BDAR from the commander when the established repair procedures could not be used.</li> <li>e. Supervised the BDAR procedures to ensure that they were done according to the appropriate BDAR manuals.</li> <li>f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges from the commander when the required repair parts were not available.</li> <li>g. Supervised the use of controlled exchanges for compliance with the commander's guidance.</li> <li>h. Notified the platoon or section leaders upon completion of the repairs.</li> <li>i. Supervised the recovery operations to ensure that the correct recovery and safety procedures were used.</li> <li>j. Supervised the Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP) procedures to ensure that the testing of oil samples was done at the required intervals.</li> <li>k. Coordinated the maintenance status with the platoon leader.</li> <li>l. Provided the unit maintenance status to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>5. Unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Diagnosed faults on the inoperative equipment.</li> <li>b. Requested the required repair parts from the PLL clerk.</li> <li>c. Repaired the equipment according to applicable TMs.</li> <li>d. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant when the established repair parts were not available.</li> <li>e. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual.</li> <li>f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges through the motor sergeant when the required repair parts were not available.</li> <li>g. Performed controlled exchanges.</li> <li>h. Performed a final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs.</li> <li>i. Employed safety procedures to minimize accidents.</li> </ul> <p>6. Unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the category of the repair as direct support or higher.</li> <li>b. Corrected unit level deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Prepared the required documentation for submission to support maintenance.</li> <li>d. Evacuated the equipment to support maintenance.</li> <li>e. Verified the completion of repairs.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Picked up the equipment upon the completion of repairs.  7. Unit maintenance personnel perform administrative-support functions. a. Maintained the PLL. b. Requested repair parts for element equipment. c. Turned in unserviceable, repairable items. d. Maintained technical publications on all organic equipment.  8. Unit maintenance personnel recover disabled vehicles. a. Verified the location of the disabled vehicle. b. Identified the best route to the vehicle, given the tactical situation. c. Coordinated indirect-fire support along the route with the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) and the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). d. Maintained security while en route to the recovery site. e. Established local security at the recovery site. f. Removed casualties from vehicles. g. Treated casualties. h. Requested medical assistance, if required. i. Evacuated casualties, if required. j. Performed a battle damage assessment to determine if repairs were required. k. Performed repairs and the BDAR on site, if possible. l. Recovered nonrepairable equipment back to the unit maintenance area according to the established recovery procedures. m. Requested the disposition of unrecoverable equipment from the commander. n. Conducted salvage operations to remove all usable equipment. o. Prepared vehicles for destruction according to the TACSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion) (05-1-0002)  
 (FM 90-7) (FM 5-100) (FM 5-102)  
 (FM 5-103) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer element is supporting an engineer brigade, group, or maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. The battalion or element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO), an operation order (OPORD), or a supplementary order from higher headquarters (HQ). The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The estimate provides the commander with courses of action (COA) consistent with the supported commander's scheme of maneuver. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander receives a warning order (WO), a FRAGO, or an OPORD and performs a mission analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the higher HQ mission and the commander's intent.</li> <li>b. Determined the facts and develop assumptions.</li> <li>c. Analyzed the relative combat power.</li> <li>d. Issued the commander's guidance.</li> <li>e. Identified the specified and implied tasks based on the commander's guidance and nature of the operations.</li> <li>f. Restated the unit mission in terms of who, what (including all essential tasks), when, where, and why.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The commander or element leader focuses on several essential components of the basic order, enemy situation, mission paragraph, task organization, logistics, engineer annex, type of operation (offensive or defensive), current intelligence picture, and time available.</b></p> <p>* 2. The commander or element leader conducts the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) and engineer battlefield assessment (EBA), aided by the staff or operations section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the situation template (SITEMP).</li> <li>b. Developed or requested a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO).</li> <li>c. Prepared an assembly area (AA) overlay with maneuver controls (MCs), friendly operational graphic, key terrain, and potential enemy objectives.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Terrain analysis is a major component of the IPB process using the obstacles, avenues of approach, key terrain, observation and fields of fire, and cover and concealment (OCOKA) framework. This assists in determining advantages or disadvantages terrain and weather offer the friendly and enemy forces.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) section develops a SITEMP. The SITEMP—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined how the enemy would attack in terms of the size and the type of units and formations.</li> <li>b. Depicted likely routes for enemy reconnaissance elements.</li> </ol> <p>4. The staff or operations section provides information on current and projected engineer task organization and the capabilities of engineer units supporting the task force (TF).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided facts concerning scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems.</li> <li>b. Ensured that— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The fire support officer (FSO) provided information on available artillery or aircraft-delivered SCATMINES.</li> <li>(2) The supply section identified the quantity and location of obstacle material on hand, the transportation assets available for moving obstacle material, and the maintenance status of equipment that could contribute to the obstacle effort.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>5. The staff or operations section analyzes the relative combat power and compared friendly and enemy combat power.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the tasks and limitations received from the brigade, including obstacle belts with or without a specified effect.</li> <li>b. Included restricted areas or restrictions on types of obstacle groups (situational, reserve, or directed).</li> </ol> <p>6. The TF identifies engineer units, SCATMINE systems (artillery, air, or ground), infantry units that can provide more manpower for obstacle emplacement, and trucks and utility aircraft for moving obstacle materials.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader issues planning guidance on obstacles which is as specific as possible.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If the element leader narrows the number of COAs, or if some aspect of the different COAs remains unchanged, they may provide specific guidance on obstacles in certain areas.</b></p> <p>8. The staff or operations section develops a COA and detailed obstacle planning begins. Focuses on the obstacle intent, integration of fires, and obstacle priorities.</p> <p>9. The staff or operations section conducts a fires analysis after reviewing the TF commander's intent on how to integrate obstacles with the COA of the maneuver unit to achieve the commander's intent.</p> <p>10. The staff or operations section develops maneuver graphics.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated how and where combat forces will mass, shift, and lift fires to destroy the enemy in maneuver and fire-control measures.</li> <li>b. Used range fans for friendly weapon systems.</li> <li>c. Combined fire-control measures locations for company teams to integrate obstacles with fires.</li> </ol> <p>*11. The TF commander provides the obstacle intent integration, and the staff or operations section decides which specific effect each directed obstacle group must achieve.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The obstacle integration should turn, disrupt, fix or block the enemy.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>12. The staff or operations section integrates the directed obstacle groups (location, target, and specific effect [intent]) with the COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Showed the obstacle groups on the COA overlay using the obstacle effect graphics.</li> <li>b. Developed graphics to reflect the location of the obstacle group as accurately as possible.</li> </ul> <p>13. The staff or operations section sets priorities for the directed obstacle groups on the COA overlay.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Aligned the obstacle group priorities to support the main effort of the TF.</li> <li>b. Numbered the obstacle effects graphics on the overlay starting with 1 and continuing in sequence.</li> </ul> <p>14. The staff or operations section conducts COA analysis and considers obstacles within the total context of the COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the scheme of engineer operations supports the maneuver plan and is integrated with the other staff or operations section elements.</li> <li>b. Evaluated enemy breaching capabilities that may make one or more varieties of individual obstacles preferable.</li> <li>c. Identified weaknesses in the plan and made adjustments, if necessary.</li> <li>d. Ensured that weapons systems capabilities were compatible with the desired obstacle effects.</li> <li>e. Developed adequate fire-control measures to support the obstacle effect.</li> </ul> <p>*15. The staff or operations section engineer compares COAs in terms of which scheme of engineer operations best supports mission accomplishment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Changed the locations of directed obstacle groups.</li> <li>b. Changed the desired obstacle effect at a specific location.</li> <li>c. Added situational obstacles, and reserve obstacle groups.</li> <li>d. Identified other mobility requirements.</li> </ul> <p>16. The staff or operations section identifies mobility requirements to determine which obstacles need lanes or bypasses to be available for friendly forces.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified lanes and bypasses required for tactical repositioning, command and control (C2), and sustainment traffic.</li> <li>b. Identified C2 mobility requirements, to include plans for rehearsals and physical placement of target reference points (TRPs).</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Other considerations are the main supply routes (MSRs) into and through the TF area, the TF logistics release point (LRP), the routes the company team takes from its position to the LRP, and the location of key TF logistics nodes.</b></p> <p>17. The staff or operations section develops obstacle plans and resource requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Resourced the final design after the commander approved the COA and any final changes.</li> <li>b. Resourced the obstacle groups according to the obstacle group priorities.</li> <li>c. Planned the individual obstacles.</li> <li>d. Designed the obstacle groups to serve as a guide to company teams.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: After comparing the COAs and determining the COA for recommendation to the commander, the staff or operations section can conduct more detailed planning for the obstacle plan that supports that COA. The staff or operations section begins by resourcing the groups based on the MC widths and the desired effect. It determines MC widths from the SITEMP.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>18. The staff or operations section develops a scheme-of-obstacles overlay. Depicts the location of obstacle belts, brigade obstacle groups (if any), and TF obstacle groups, within the TF sector.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Coordination is perhaps the most vital component of effective obstacle integration. This coordination must occur between the emplacing unit leader (normally an engineer platoon leader) and the company team commander. It is at this level that units directly integrate obstacles with the effects and capabilities of weapons and the fire plan. Once the coordination is complete, the emplacing unit physically sites the obstacle with the company team. Effective coordination with the company team commander who is responsible for the obstacle group is essential to making the obstacles a combat multiplier. The engineer and the maneuver team commander work closely to ensure the complete integration of obstacles with the company team plan.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-0415	Analyze Battlefield Information

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion) (05-1-0003)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. The staff engineer must prepare an engineer annex as part of the maneuver element operation order (OPORD). The digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The annex contains the essential information needed to support the maneuver commander's operation. The engineer annex is clear, complete, brief, and timely. It avoids qualified directives and its concept is understood by the maneuver force. The digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and staff develop an engineer annex that is clear, complete, brief, and timely.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the annex avoided qualified directives.</li> <li>b. Derived critical information from the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA) process.</li> <li>c. Covered all critical information and tasks not in the order.</li> <li>d. Covered items not in the standing operating procedures (SOPs).</li> <li>e. Directed information and tasks to major subordinate elements of the supported unit, excluding supporting engineer units.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The actual content of the annex depends on the type of operation and engineer plan. The engineer annex includes any combination of written instructions, matrices, or overlays needed to convey the necessary details of the engineer plan. A standardized annex format makes it easier for the engineer staff officer to remember what is included and for subordinate staff officers to find required information.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Coordinated information and instructions with other parts of the OPORD, the supported-unit commander, and staff.</li> </ul> <p>2. The staff or operations section ensures that the engineer annex includes matrices and overlays, as necessary, to convey the plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified all existing and proposed friendly obstacles and control measures (obstacles, restrictions, and lanes; directed or tactical reserve obstacles; and situational obstacles, including associated named areas of interest [NAIs] and targeted areas of interest [TAIs]).</li> <li>b. Depicted all known and plotted enemy obstacles (must also be on the situation template).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Depicted NBC contaminated areas, scatterable mine (SCATMINE) restrictions, river crossing locations, and logistic locations and routes, as they apply to engineer operations.		
3. The staff develops the engineer annex according to Field Manual 5-100.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>-----</p> <p>4. SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <p>a. General concept of logistics support.</p> <p>b. Material and services.</p> <p>    (1) Supply.</p> <p>    (2) Transportation.</p> <p>    (3) Services.</p> <p>c. Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</p> <p>d. Personnel.</p> <p>e. Civil-military cooperation.</p> <p>f. Miscellaneous.</p> <p>-----</p> <p>f. Ensured that the command-and-signal paragraph specified the following:</p> <p>    (1) Command.</p> <p>        (a) Command post (CP) and key leader locations during the operation and planned movements.</p> <p>        (b) Locations and planned movements of higher C2.</p> <p>        (c) The logistical chain of command.</p> <p>    (2) Signal.</p> <p>        (a) The communication/signal differences not covered in the standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>        (b) The critical reporting requirements not covered in the SOP.</p> <p>        (c) The designated nets for mission and routine reports.</p> <p>* 2. The commander ensures that the necessary information is included and briefed to subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 3. The commander ensures that the order is disseminated/briefed in time to satisfy the one-third/two-thirds rule (allowing subordinates two-thirds of the available time).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning
071-326-5626	Prepare an Oral Operation Order

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)
05-1-0412	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)
05-2-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex
05-2-0413	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-3-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Platoon)
05-3-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** S2 Section  
S3 Section

**TASK:** Report Engineer Information (05-1-0026)  
(FM 5-100) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer element is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and in a secure area. The TOC is transferring engineer information to other elements (higher headquarters [HQ] and adjacent and subordinate units). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Higher HQ and adjacent and subordinate elements have continuous, accurate, and timely engineer information that will have an impact on their operations. The digital elements are sending and receiving reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. All reports sent via digital means must also be followed up with the appropriate Department of the Army (DA) forms according to the element tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and standardization agreement (STANAG). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The battalion TOC Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) receives engineer information.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital elements maintain a message log using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) that is available according to the elements TACSOP.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged information in a message log.</li> <li>b. Requested clarification of information received from the submitting element.</li> <li>c. Maintained a file copy of all hard copy reports.</li> </ul> <p>2. The S2 or S3 analyzes the information received and disseminates it to the appropriate action element within the battalion TOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated personnel and administration information to the Adjutant (US Army) (S1).</li> <li>b. Disseminated intelligence and weather information to the S2.</li> <li>c. Disseminated operations and maneuver information to the S3.</li> <li>d. Disseminated logistics and maintenance information to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> <li>e. Disseminated command-related information (guidance, tactical decisions, and critical resources) to the commanding officer (CO) or executive officer (XO) of the command group.</li> <li>f. Disseminated information to action elements using the reporting procedures on the Maneuver Control System (MCS) according to the battalion standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>g. Disseminated information copies to other elements, as required.</li> </ul> <p>3. The action element(s) analyzes information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the content validity and filtered out noncritical information.</li> <li>b. Determined the importance of the information to the operation.</li> <li>c. Determined the required actions, coordination, and reports.</li> </ul> <p>4. The action element(s) acts on the information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted required coordination with engineer and maneuver elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Updated digital overlays, records, status boards, and logs on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and the MCS.</li> <li>c. Determined the course of action (COA).</li> <li>d. Selected the COA.</li> <li>e. Obtained guidance or concurrence on the selected COA from relevant elements and the command group, when needed.</li> <li>f. Implemented the COA.</li> <li>g. Prepared required reports according to the battalion SOP.</li> <li>h. Provided the S2 or S3 with an action summary and all appropriate reports according to the battalion SOP.</li> </ul> <p>5. The S2 or S3 prepares and submits reports and engineer information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the reports for transmission to subordinate elements and the battalion staff; transmitted and submitted the reports according to the battalion SOP using the MCS.</li> <li>b. Prepared and transmitted and submitted reports to higher HQ, the supported maneuver command, and adjacent elements according to the higher HQ SOP using the MCS.</li> <li>c. Updated digital overlays, records, status boards, and logs on the MCS, as required.</li> <li>d. Submitted reports to the appropriate elements and HQ using the MCS.</li> <li>e. Logged the transmission and submission of the report.</li> <li>f. Updated the command group using the fastest means of communications, the MCS or mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal (MSRT), as required.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0026	Report Engineer Information
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section

**TASK:** Conduct Base Cluster Operations (05-1-0039)  
 (FM 3-90)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in the division rear, corps rear, or communications zone (COMMZ) under a Level I, II, or III threat. The battalion commander is the base cluster commander and receives guidance from the rear-area operations center (RAOC) on the geographical area of the cluster and the bases located in the cluster. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion implements control measures and ensures continuous coordination and communication. It defends the base cluster without incurring casualties or damage due to an inadequate defensive plan or defensive measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The base cluster commander, aided by the staff, organizes the defense for the bases in the cluster.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted an assessment of the strengths and weaknesses of base defenses.</li> <li>b. Ensured that obstacles and all other defensive measures were used.</li> <li>c. Requested, through the base defense liaison team (BDLT), the repositioning of bases that were unable to provide mutual support.</li> <li>d. Specified the closure time for the bases that required repositioning.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit establishes a base cluster operations center (BCOC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Collocated the BCOC with the main battalion command post (CP).</li> <li>b. Arranged liaison with the bases in the cluster.</li> <li>c. Maintained a current map on rear battle operations for the cluster area of operations (AO).</li> <li>d. Kept the RAOC and the supporting military police (MP) unit informed of rear battle operations within the cluster.</li> </ul> <p>3. The BCOC develops a base cluster defense plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained base defense plans from the bases in the cluster.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the base defense plans to ensure their compatibility with the base cluster defense plan.</li> <li>c. Incorporated fire support, reaction forces, MP assistance, internal command and control, and initial defensive response against an enemy attack.</li> <li>d. Provided a copy (with changes) of the base cluster defense plan to the supporting RAOC through the BDLT.</li> </ul> <p>4. The base defense operations center (BDOC) establishes and maintains continuous communications with the BCOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established field telephone (wire) communications with the BCOC (primary).</li> <li>b. Obtained radio call signs and frequencies of the bases (alternate).</li> <li>c. Prepared and maintained access rosters for personnel authorized to pick up and carry message traffic.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The BDOC establishes and maintains continuous communications with the supporting RAOC using organic communications equipment or a relay with other units in the rear battle net.  6. The BCOC controls the defense of the base cluster when under attack. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the use and deployment of base cluster reaction forces.</li> <li>b. Requested, through the BDLT, the support of adjoining units, MP, or the tactical combat force.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the use of MP or the tactical combat force with the BDLT and the RAOC, when required.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the employment of the base cluster reaction forces, MP, or the tactical combat force with the supported BDOC.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section

**TASK:** Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721)  
 (FM 5-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been tasked with a mission that requires additional resources and augmentation support. Augmentation support is available. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion staff determines the augmentation support necessary to accomplish the mission and submits a request and then begins the coordination for logistical support that provides for unhindered mission execution by the attached element. Digital elements perform collaborative planning; send requests, reports, and orders; and perform Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) functions, using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: Digital elements perform collaborative planning, make requests, and send or receive reports using digital systems.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The battalion staff performs mission analysis and determines resource requirements and availability during the estimate process.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined resources required in time to accomplish the mission.</li> <li>b. Determined the availability of organic resources.</li> <li>c. Included requirements for rations, maintenance, fuel, and lubricants to support augmentation element(s), to include shortfalls, such as equipment maintenance.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) submits a request for augmentation support.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested augmentation support from higher headquarters (HQ) if not supporting a maneuver element.</li> <li>b. Requested augmentation support from higher HQ and the maneuver commander when supporting a maneuver unit.</li> <li>c. Submitted the request immediately after the estimate process was complete.</li> <li>d. Included the following information in the request:                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Type of relationship (command or support).</li> <li>(2) Amount and type of personnel and equipment needed.</li> <li>(3) Length of time needed to accomplish the mission.</li> <li>(4) Mission of the battalion.</li> <li>(5) Mission of the augmentation support element.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The battalion staff modifies the estimate process based on the actual augmentation support received.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prioritized the effort for the supporting element.</li> <li>b. Effected the coordination for logistical support based on the command or support relationship, such as food, fuel, and maintenance.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The S3 coordinates the liaison of the augmentation element with the engineer company(s).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the time, place, and attendance requirements for issuing the battalion operation order (OPORD) if not already issued.</li> <li>b. Determined the time and place for the liaison between the augmentation element and the engineer company.</li> </ul> <p>5. The battalion staff monitors the attached elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received personnel strength, maintenance status, mission status, and updates as required.</li> <li>b. Shifted assets as necessary.</li> <li>c. Inspected the quality of workmanship.</li> <li>d. Visited the element to maintain high morale.</li> </ul> <p>6. The augmented unit staff terminates augmentation support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Accounted for equipment and personnel.</li> <li>b. Reported mission accomplishment to higher and receiving HQ.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note: Reports are sent via FM or digital means according to the standing operating procedure (SOP) of the element.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-1218)  
 (FM 24-1) (FM 24-18) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)  
 (FM 3-11) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 34-45)  
 (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, an element is conducting combat operations. All communications systems are on hand and functional. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element submits reports, such as operational occurrence reports, spot reports (SPOTREPs), and shelling reports (SHELREPs) to higher headquarters (HQ) in a timely manner. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Reports should be in the correct format, as shown in this task, the appropriate field manual, or the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders submit the SPOTREP to higher HQ as required by the unit SOP or the situation.  <b>NOTE: Digital units send reports through alert messaging using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the SPOTREP included the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE).</li> <li>b. Dispatched the SPOTREP by the fastest means available; in a tactical situation, dispatched the SPOTREP within 5 minutes of receipt of the information. When necessary, the leaders submitted a partial report within the time constraints and updated it as additional information became available.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Leaders submit the SHELREP, the mortar bombing report (MORTREP), and the bombing report (BOMREP) to the next higher HQ.  <b>NOTE: The reports should include the following: The originating unit; the observer position; the direction; the time that the shelling began; the time that the shelling ended; the area that was bombed, shelled, rocketed, or mortared; the number and the nature of weapons and aircraft; the nature of fire (direct or indirect); the number, type, and caliber of shells, rockets, bombs, or mortar rounds; and the flash-to-bang time, damage, and angle of the fall or descent, as the time and the conditions permit.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the report within 30 minutes following the activity or consistent with the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Submitted the report, even if it contained incomplete information.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Ensured that the encryption conformed to the signal operation instructions (SOI).</p> <p>3. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) submits a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) report to the net control station (NCS) within 10 minutes of notification of the activity. The report contains the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Item 1, the MIJI. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the numerals 022.</li> <li>b. Item 2, the type of interference. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the following numerals for the interference: meaconing - 1, intrusion - 2, jamming - 3, interference - 4.</li> <li>c. Item 3, the instrument affected. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the following numerals for the instrument affected: radio - 1, radar - 2, navigational aid - 3, satellite - 4, electro-optics - 5.</li> <li>d. Item 4, the frequency or the channel affected. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the affected frequency.</li> <li>e. Item 5, complete the call sign of the affected station operator (for secure and nonsecure communications).</li> <li>f. Item 6, complete the grid coordinates of the affected station. When transmitting by nonsecure means, encrypt the coordinates.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The leaders submit all operational occurrence reports as soon as the tactical situation permits. The information included—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The line of departure (LD) crossing.</li> <li>b. The checkpoint arrival times.</li> <li>c. The rally point (RP) arrival time.</li> <li>d. The logistics report.</li> <li>e. The intelligence report.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The leaders submit both verbal and written patrol reports as required by the unit SOP. The report included—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The designation of the patrol.</li> <li>b. The date.</li> <li>c. The unit receiving the report.</li> <li>d. The name of the person submitting the report.</li> <li>e. The size and composition of the patrol.</li> <li>f. The mission.</li> <li>g. The departure and return times.</li> <li>h. The routes out and back.</li> <li>i. A terrain description, including the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Type of terrain, such as dry, swamp, jungle, thickly wooded, high brush, or rocky.</li> <li>(2) Deepness of the ravines and the draws.</li> <li>(3) Size, type, strength, and condition of the bridges.</li> <li>(4) Effect on armored and wheeled vehicles.</li> </ul> </li> <li>j. Data on the enemy, including— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The strength.</li> <li>(2) The disposition.</li> <li>(3) The condition of the defense.</li> <li>(4) The equipment and weapons.</li> <li>(5) The morale of the personnel.</li> <li>(6) The exact location.</li> <li>(7) A shift in disposition.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(8) The time that the activity was observed and the coordinates where the activity occurred.</p> <p>k. Any map corrections.</p> <p>l. Any miscellaneous information, including aspects of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) warfare.</p> <p>m. The outcome of previous enemy encounters, including—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy prisoners and their disposition.</li> <li>(2) The identification of enemy personnel.</li> <li>(3) Enemy casualties.</li> <li>(4) Captured documents and equipment.</li> </ul> <p>n. The condition of the patrol, including the disposition of the dead or wounded.</p> <p>o. Conclusions and recommendations. Include what was accomplished and any recommendations regarding the patrol equipment and tactics.</p> <p>p. The signature, grade or rank, and organization or unit of the patrol leader.</p> <p>q. Additional remarks by the interrogator and the signature of the interrogator.</p> <p>* 6. The leaders submit an NBC 1 report.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the initial NBC 1 (within 5 minutes of the activity) and follow-up reports to the unit HQ.</li> <li>b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available (by flash precedence for the initial burst and immediate precedence for subsequent attacks).</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The leaders submit an NBC 4 report.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the report to the unit HQ.</li> <li>b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available.</li> </ul> <p>8. The leaders submit a generic report.</p> <p><b>NOTE: General reports are considered to be any report not covered in the outline above.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted reports according to the unit SOPs.</li> <li>b. Sent reports in the correct formats.</li> <li>c. Reported information to the appropriate levels by the fastest means possible.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-2-1383	Disseminate Terrain Information (Products)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section

**TASK:** Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 101-5) (FM 3-90.1)  
 (FM 5-422) (FM 5-71-2) (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, the element receives a mission from a warning order (WO), a fragmentary order (FRAGO), or an operation order (OPORD) to perform operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit leader gives a WO, conducts a leader's reconnaissance, issues an OPORD, and supervises the preparation for the assigned mission within the allotted time. Digital units have the ability to perform a map reconnaissance using the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS). The Army Battle Command System (ABCS) can be used to submit reports and orders to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives the mission in a WO, a FRAGO, or an OPORD from its higher headquarters (HQ). He determines the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC); the needed supplies and equipment; and special tasks to assign.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units send and receive orders using the ABCS or FM means according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p> <p>* 2. The element leader issues a WO to subordinate leaders.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stated the mission (nature of the operation).</li> <li>Identified the task organization.</li> <li>Stated the time of the operation.</li> <li>Provided any special instructions, such as drills to be rehearsed, precombat checks (PCCs), and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>Stated the element timeline.</li> </ol> <p>* 3. The element leader develops a tentative plan while the element prepares for the mission.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Developed the plan based on METT-TC factors.</li> <li>Planned the available time using the reverse-planning process.</li> <li>Used no more than one-third of the available time, leaving the remainder for subordinate element preparation.</li> <li>Ensured that subordinate leaders began the PCCs and reconfigured the equipment based on the mission, to include checking rations, water, weapons, ammunition, individual uniforms and equipment, mission-essential equipment, and the individual soldier's knowledge of the mission.</li> </ol> <p>4. The element continues assembly area activities and security.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maintained equipment and weapons.</li> <li>Performed personal hygiene.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Resupplied equipment and materials, to include small arms ammunition, demolitions, mines, and refueling of vehicles.</p> <p>d. Rehearsed battle and crew drills.</p> <p>e. Performed weapon test firing.</p> <p>f. Ate.</p> <p>g. Rested.</p> <p>h. Maintained security.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader initiates movement before completing the plan.  <b>NOTE: Subordinate leaders move the element in the absence of the element leader. This task step may be omitted, occur in a different sequence, or be done concurrently with another task step.</b></p> <p>* 6. The element leader performs a reconnaissance.  <b>NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and DTSS products from higher HQ.</b></p> <p>a. Performed a map reconnaissance, as a minimum, along with subordinate leaders when practical.</p> <p>b. Performed a ground reconnaissance (usually as part of a larger force).  (1) Included as many subordinate leaders as practical.  (2) Identified the critical areas of the mission.  (3) Moved as far forward as the time and situation permitted.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader completes the plan.</p> <p>a. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the map or ground reconnaissance.</p> <p>b. Made changes to the tentative plan based on available equipment, personnel, and material.</p> <p>c. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the intelligence gained by reconnaissance assets.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader verbally issues the completed order, in a FRAGO or OPORD format, to subordinate and attached leaders. The order contained the following information and could be given to the entire element at the same time.</p> <p>a. SITUATION.  (1) Enemy forces.  (2) Friendly forces.  (3) Attachments and detachments.</p> <p>b. MISSION.</p> <p>c. EXECUTION.  (1) Concept of the operation.  (a) Scheme of maneuver.  (b) Fires.  (c) Reconnaissance and surveillance.  (d) Intelligence.  (e) Engineer support.  (f) Air defense.  (g) Information operations.</p> <p>(2) Subunit tasks.</p> <p>(3) Coordinating instructions. At a minimum, the element leader must address the—  (a) Time or condition when the plan or order becomes effective.  (b) Commander's critical-information requirements (CCIR).  (c) Risk reduction control measures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The element leader determines the risk reduction control measures by using the five steps of the risk management process, referring to Field Manual (FM) 101-5 for additional information.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(d) Rules of engagement.</li> <li>(e) Environmental considerations.</li> <li>(f) Force protection.</li> </ul> <p>d. SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Support concept.</li> <li>(2) Materials and services.</li> <li>(3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</li> <li>(4) Personnel.</li> <li>(5) Civil military.</li> </ul> <p>e. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) The location of the element leadership, support element leadership, and command posts for the operation.</li> <li>(b) Succession of command. (If not stated in the element SOP or tactical standing operating procedure [TACSOP]).</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Signal operation instructions (SOI) in effect.</li> <li>(b) Radio communication restrictions.</li> <li>(c) Visual and pyrotechnic signals.</li> <li>(d) Code words and reports specific to the operation.</li> <li>(e) Communications security (COMSEC) guidelines and procedures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 9. Subordinate leaders complete the PCCs, and element leaders perform the PCIs.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Subordinate leaders can perform the PCCs on receipt of a WO or FRAGO. The element should have mission-specific PCC/PCI checklists in the unit TACSOP.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked and inventoried equipment, ensured that the items were serviceable and that the element had the items specified in the unit SOP and the items required for specific mission.</li> <li>b. Ensured that adequate resupply of ammunition, food, water, repair parts, fuel, medical supplies, obstacle material, demolitions, and mines were available.</li> <li>c. Performed a communications check.</li> <li>d. Ensured that personnel, equipment, and carriers were camouflaged and that weapons were test fired.</li> <li>e. Ensured that personnel understood their task and purpose and that of the element headquarters.</li> <li>f. Inspected personnel, vehicles, weapons, and equipment just before starting the mission.</li> </ul> <p>*10. Leaders perform at least one type of rehearsal.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
S3 Section

**TASK:** Provide Liaison (05-4-1379)  
(FM 5-100) (FM 34-2) (FM 5-100-15)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been requested by higher headquarters (HQ) to determine the support requirements. The element performs liaison with lower, lateral, and higher echelons. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element plans operations and advises the supported commander on the availability, development, and use of the element services.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader establishes analog, digital, or satellite communications with the supported unit and higher HQ. * 2. The element leader interfaces directly with division staffs, corps staffs, theater Army staffs, and (on occasion) Department of Defense (DOD) civilian agencies. <b>NOTE: From a division standpoint, coordination between the liaison officer (LNO) and the assistant division engineer (ADE) is necessary for support provided by all nondivisional engineer elements.</b> * 3. The element leader determines the requirements and advises the supported commander on the use of supporting elements and capabilities. 4. The element provides the mission-specific requirements. * 5. The element leader conducts liaison with staff elements and support elements to ensure that the mission requirements are understood and met. 6. The element submits reports and requests through the supported agency through the LNO.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
11-5-0101.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel Voice Radio Station (AM)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Communication Section

**TASK:** Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI), the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards exist, such as nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional-finding ability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Radio operators install a radio set for operation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured radios in the mount.</li> <li>b. Connected audio accessories.</li> <li>c. Installed antennas.</li> <li>d. Performed before-operation, preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>e. Performed radio operational checks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Radio operators make initial entry into the nets.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI or SSI.</li> <li>b. Entered a radio net.</li> <li>c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recognized jamming or interference.</li> <li>b. Determined if the interference was internal or external.</li> <li>c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued to operate.</li> <li>b. Increased the transmit power.</li> <li>c. Tuned the receiver for max signal.</li> <li>d. Relocated the antenna.</li> <li>e. Requested a change of frequency.</li> <li>f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor.</li> <li>g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder reports.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security [TSEC]/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57). b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15. c. Operated only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI/SSI. d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI/SSI (not necessary in secure voice operation). e. Ensured that the length was not more than 20 seconds per transmission and that the number of transmissions was at a minimum. f. Operated on the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations. g. Employed the correct call signs and frequencies. h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. i. Complied with net discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINGGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A)

(FM 24-19) (FM 20-3) (FM 24-18)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The team has been briefed and given extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the appropriate loading devices with keys, a radio net diagram, maps, and grid coordinates. Subtasks 1 through 4 are done in the motor pool or staging area before going to the field location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The SINGGARS radio sets are operational according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The supervisor checks all radios for completeness and operability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicular and manpack systems were assembled correctly.</li> </ul> <p><b>WARNING: HIGH VOLTAGES EXIST AT CONNECTOR J1 ON THE MOUNTING ADAPTER. ENSURE THAT J1 IS COVERED OR CAPPED WHEN NOT IN USE.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Ensured that the operator logged the amp hours (manpack system only).</li> <li>c. Ensured that preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) were completed.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The supervisor selects the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected primary and alternate locations within the general site.</li> <li>b. Established and maintained camouflage discipline.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the location provided effective use of the terrain in an electronic warfare (EW) environment.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the location avoided interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.</li> </ul> <p>3. Net members perform premission checks for a SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed before-operation PMCS.</li> <li>b. Loaded the transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MS-18290 (nonintegrated communications security [non-ICOM] only).</li> <li>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (integrated communications security [ICOM] only).</li> <li>d. Loaded the traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13.</li> </ul> <p>4. The net control station (NCS) performs premission checks for the SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Performed preoperational PMCS.</p> <p>b. Loaded the TSK and the hop set using MX-10579 or MX18290 (non-ICOM only).</p> <p>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only).</p> <p>d. Loaded the TEK using KYK-13.</p> <p>e. Loaded the FH sync-time according to the SOI/SSI.</p> <p>f. Loaded the cue frequency.</p> <p>g. Directed the alternate NCS to load the cue frequency, as required.</p> <p>h. Changed the net identification according to the SOI/SSI.</p> <p>5. The NCS opens the net.</p> <p>a. Issued the net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel.</p> <p>b. Issued and sent the electronic countercountermeasures [ECCM] electronic remote fill (ERF) instructions.</p> <p>c. Set the channel switch to the hop set channel and issued the net call.</p> <p>d. Opened the net.</p> <p>e. Reset the channel switch to MAN and called the missing net members.</p> <p>f. Repeated the cold start.</p> <p>g. Set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</p> <p>6. Net members enter the net.</p> <p>a. Responded in the correct sequence to the net call.</p> <p>b. Stored the ERF, set the channel switch to the hop set channel, reset the channel switch to MAN, and set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</p> <p>c. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</p> <p>d. Reset the channel switch to MAN and the FCTN switch to LO if the member missed the ERF or heard no communications on the hop set channel.</p> <p>e. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</p> <p>7. Net members perform the late net entry (LNE), cue, and ERF method.</p> <p>a. Performed premission checks for an FH cold start.</p> <p>b. Loaded the cue frequency according to the SOI/SSI.</p> <p>c. Initiated the cue call.</p> <p>d. Reported into the net.</p> <p>e. Switched to the MAN channel and conducted the cold-start net opening.</p> <p>8. Net members use proper radio procedures.</p> <p>a. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum.</p> <p>b. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate.</p> <p>c. Used authorized call signs and frequencies.</p> <p>d. Observed periods of radio-listening silence.</p> <p>e. Operated on a random schedule.</p> <p>f. Adhered to net discipline.</p> <p>9. Team members recognize different types of interference.</p> <p>a. Checked the RT signal (SIG) display when it was not transmitting.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If the display was constantly or intermittently higher than 1, then the members disconnected the antenna to determine if the interference was internal or external.</b></p> <p>b. Initiated the ECCM for external symptoms.</p> <p>10. Team members initiate ECCM actions.</p> <p>a. Continued to operate.</p> <p>b. Did not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming in the clear.</p> <p>c. Reduced the transmission speed.</p> <p>d. Increased the transmitter power.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Relocated the antenna.</p> <p>f. Prepared and forwarded a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report to the supervisor in the United States message text format (USMTF).</p> <p>11. Team members extend the range of the radio station.</p> <p>a. Inspected the OE-254 for serviceability.</p> <p>b. Installed the OE-254 antenna using the team method.</p> <p>c. Accomplished the transaction from the whip antenna to the OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service.</p> <p>12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site.</p> <p>a. Installed and connected the OE-254 antennas.</p> <p>b. Performed preoperational PMCS.</p> <p>c. Loaded the CMD NET MAN frequency in radio C.</p> <p>d. Loaded the CMD NET MAN and cue frequencies in radio D.</p> <p>e. Loaded the TSK and the TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only).</p> <p>f. Loaded the hop set and the TEK into both radios (ICOM only).</p> <p>g. Cued the LNE using radio D.</p> <p>h. Stored the ERF into both radios.</p> <p>i. Changed radio D to RTS MAN and cue frequencies and TRS net ID.</p> <p>j. Set the FCTN switches of radios C and D to RXMT.</p> <p>13. Team members initiate the net radio interface (NRI) call.</p> <p>a. Called the NRI operator on the NRI hop set channel, or initiated a cue call on the net control interface (NCI) cue channel, as required.</p> <p>b. Switched to NRI MAN channel.</p> <p>c. Established communications on the NRI hop set channel.</p> <p>d. Identified the telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number.</p> <p>14. Team members maintain the SINCGARS radio net.</p> <p>a. Performed PMCS, as required.</p> <p>b. Performed fault isolation, as required.</p> <p>c. Performed user-level maintenance, as required.</p> <p>d. Evacuated the faulty equipment, as required.</p> <p>e. Completed the necessary entries in the maintenance record.</p> <p>f. Reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the immediate supervisor.</p> <p>15. The NCS closes the net.</p> <p>a. Called the net and issued closedown instructions.</p> <p>b. Acknowledged the net members.</p> <p>c. Received acknowledgement in the correct sequence.</p> <p>d. Performed after-operation PMCS.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Command Section  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communication Section

**TASK:** Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process (12-1-0408.05-T01A)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 3-0)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is engaging in combat operations and has received a mission from higher headquarters (HQ). The digital elements have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The battalion commander has issued planning guidance. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel estimate and annex of the OPOrd are completed in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section prepares the personnel estimate. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained the commander's restated mission.</li> <li>b. Obtained intelligence information from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</li> <li>c. Obtained tactical information from the commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> <li>d. Obtained logistical information from the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> <li>e. Prepared the troop preparedness situation.</li> <li>f. Analyzed and compared courses of action.</li> <li>g. Developed conclusions.</li> <li>h. Presented conclusions to the commander.</li> </ul> 2. The S1 section participates in the preparation process for the service support annex. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the battalion task organization.</li> <li>b. Updated task force (TF) battle rosters and personnel strength (PS) charts to reflect the new task organization.</li> <li>c. Advised the commander and staff on TF PS.</li> <li>d. Developed estimates of injured, sick, and wounded rates.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the location of medical-support facilities and evacuation routes and procedures.</li> <li>f. Provided medical-support information to staff members in support of staff planning.</li> <li>g. Relayed tactical and operational information and command directives to medical-support units.</li> <li>h. Verified casualty data and strength information with the battalion aid station.</li> <li>i. Established requirements and procedures for strength accounting, replacements, and casualty reporting.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
j. Coordinated and designated temporary enemy prisoner of war (EPW) and civilian detainee collection points and outlined evacuation procedures. k. Prepared the personnel portion of paragraph 4 (service support) of the OPORD. l. Briefed the task organization and personnel portions of the OPORD.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

## CHAPTER 6

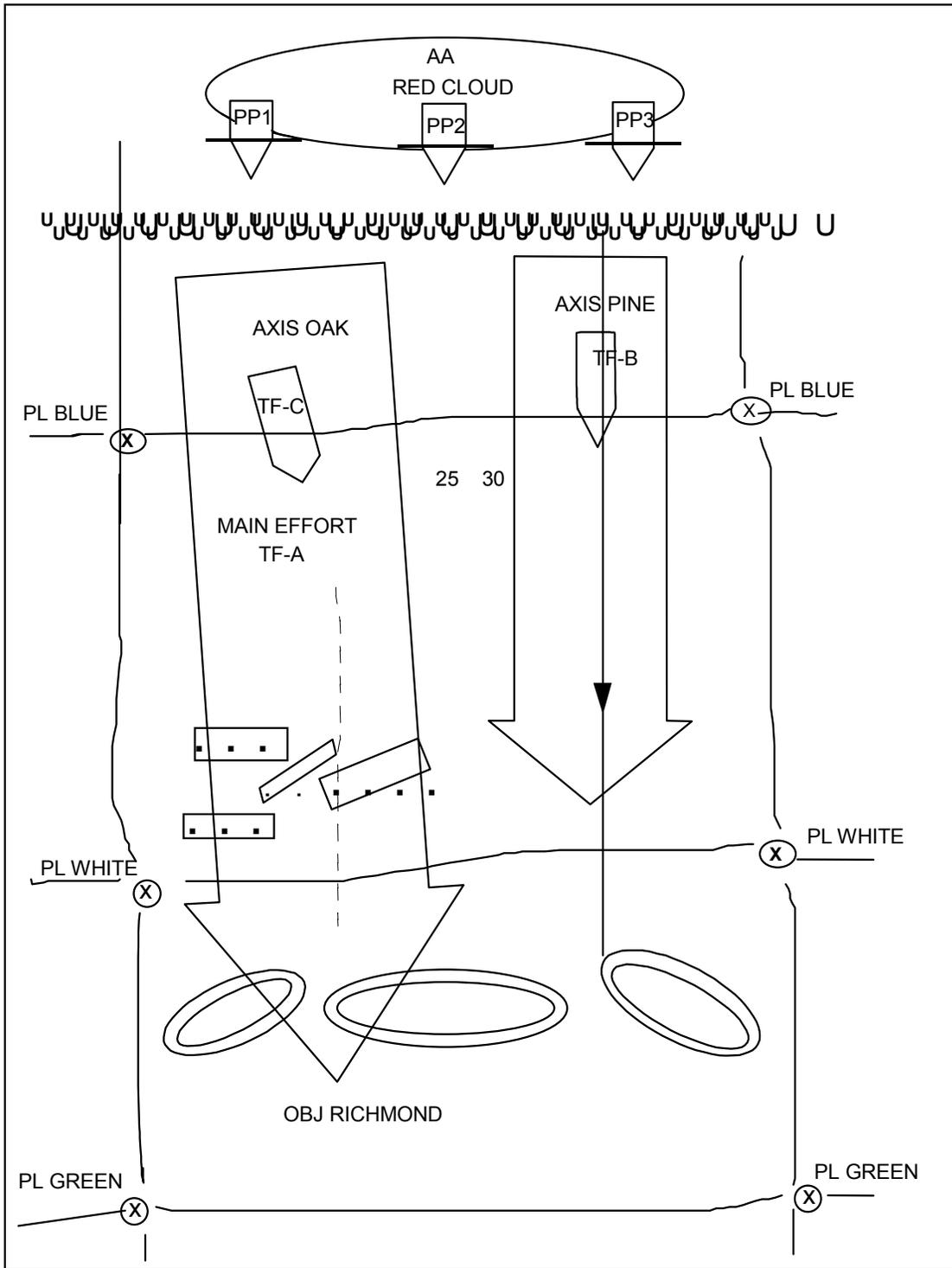
### External Evaluation

6-1. General. An external evaluation is used to assess the ability of the unit to perform its mission. Units may modify this evaluation based on the METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected T&EOs from Chapter 5 that involve the total unit and employ a realistic OPFOR and MILES are used for the evaluation. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander can identify the unit strengths and weaknesses. These strengths and weakness are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit capabilities. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario that contains the mission and the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Figure 6-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. Procedures for developing the evaluation are discussed below.

**Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario**

Event	Action	Proposed Time Frame	Estimated Time Allotted
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations	Before start time	
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		
3	Issue a Road March Order	Day 1 - 0200 hours	2 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	0400 hours	5 hours
5	Occupy an AA	0900 hours	3 hours
<b>Module 1</b>			
6	Receive a WO	1200 hours	2 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)		
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations		
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
10	Conduct Administrative Operations		
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations		
<b>Module 2</b>			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations	Day 2 - 1400 hours	
13	Receive a WO		
14	Support Combat Operations (Counter mobility)		
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
16	Move to an AAR Site and Conduct an AAR		
17	ENDEX		



**Figure 6-1. Sample Graphic Illustration Scenario**

a. Identify the missions for evaluating each element from Figure 2-2. Record the selected missions on the unit proficiency work sheet (UPW) (Figure 6-2).

Unit: _____		Date: _____				
Number	Unit Mission/Task	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Unit Overall Rating and Remarks
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
<b>NOTE: If more space is required for remarks, use the back side of this form.</b>						

Figure 6-2. Sample Unit Proficiency Work Sheet



c. Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheet, which is used for recording the results of the evaluation.

d. Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order that they logically occur in the detailed scenario (Table 6-1). Group the selected missions and tasks into parts for continuous operations. The parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess the MILES casualties and to conduct in-process AARs.

6-3. Resourcing and Planning. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of the support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating HQ must prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

6-4. Selecting and Training Observers/Controllers. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting O/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team comprised of the following personnel is suggested for performing an external evaluation:

- (1) Senior O/C.
- (2) Staff O/C.
- (3) Operations O/C.
- (4) Administration O/C.
- (5) Logistics O/C.
- (6) NBC O/C.

b. The O/Cs must have a thorough knowledge of the unit mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They must understand the overall operation of the unit and how it is integrated into and supports force-projection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local-defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC operations. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in NBC and local-defense, common-task areas. The O/Cs should be equal in grade to the soldier in charge of the element they are evaluating, and they should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as a team member, and state their findings in reports and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing O/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of the specific duties and responsibilities, and building a spirit of teamwork. O/C training includes—

- (1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master events list, and the specific evaluation purposes and objectives.
- (2) The unit METL and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this MTP.
- (3) The O/C team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.

**Table 6-2. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements**

<b>CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR FTX 5-1-E0001</b>			
<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (See note below.)</b>			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
040-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>Class IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the exercise.</b>			

(4) The detailed responsibilities of individual team members, with special emphasis on the master events list items that are their responsibility. This includes—

- (a) A review of written instructions and materials contained in the O/Cs folders.

- (b) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.
- (c) The O/C communications and command and control (C2) systems.
- (d) Safety procedures.
- (e) Evaluation data collection OPLAN and procedures.
- (f) AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation, which includes war-gaming all items on the master events list in order of their occurrence and reviewing each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership, focuses his efforts on ensuring that the O/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of the team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the unit AAR, and conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Forces. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the unit is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the unit capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or a senior NCO who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities. He must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. The training includes—

- (1) Threat tactics and rules of engagement.
- (2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- (3) OPFOR tasks and standards.
- (4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- (5) C2.
- (6) Safety.

6-6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by various individuals and elements that are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

a. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit.

b. The HQ two echelons above the unit being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. It issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR.

c. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and must advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for implementing the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is developed by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer unit to accomplish its wartime missions.

b. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. Use the following four steps for the evaluation:

**Step 1.** Identify the MTP T&EOs that correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

**Step 2.** Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit performances of the tasks. Do this for each evaluation plan task.

**Step 3.** Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

**Step 4.** Record the unit overall capability to perform the task by using GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

(a) GO - The unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standard.

(b) NO-GO - The unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

c. Use other locally designed reports that are approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the unit overall final rating. The reports listed below can be used to collect the information.

(1) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-4). This report is used to record personnel and equipment status.

(2) Environmental data sheet (Figure 6-5). This report is used to record information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(3) Personnel and equipment loss report (Figure 6-6). This report is used to record information concerning the element personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

<b>UNIT DATA SHEET</b>						
1. Unit designation:				Date:		
2. Unit leaders (circle the most appropriate selection):						
Position	Rank	Time in Unit (Months)				
Commander	LTC/MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Executive Officer	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S3	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S2	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S1	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S4	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion Maintenance Officer	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
A Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
B Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
C Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
3. Unit strength (excluding leaders):						
4. Equipment shortages (major items):						
5. Comments:						
Observer/controller signature:						

**Figure 6-4. Sample Unit Data Sheet**

<b>ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET</b>						
Exercise number and description:						
Date and time the exercise started:						
Date and time the exercise ended:						
1. <u>Weather conditions (circle the appropriate description):</u>						
Clear	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy	Hazy	Rain	Snow	Fog
Other:						
Temperature:						
2. <u>Ground conditions (circle the appropriate description):</u>						
Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow			
Other:						
3. <u>Light conditions (circle the appropriate description):</u>						
Day	Night					
Moon phase:	None	1/4	1/2	3/4	Full	
Average range of visibility due to light:						
4. <u>Terrain (circle the appropriate description):</u>						
Flat	Rolling	Mountains	Jungle	Desert	Urban	Artic
Other:						
Top soil:	Sandy	Rocky	Clay	Other:		
Average range of visibility due to terrain:						
5. <u>Remarks:</u>						

**Figure 6-5. Sample Environmental Data Sheet**



6-8. Preparing After-Action Reviews. AARs provide direct feedback to unit members by involving them in the diagnosis process and by enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation. In this way, participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through the after-action phases.

b. Key steps in the AAR process are—

(1) Planning. Planning for AARs is started in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical breakpoints and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed subsequently. Qualified O/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) Preparation. AAR preparation starts with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the unit performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable O/Cs and unit personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) Conduct. AARs are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR purpose, the establishment of the AAR ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. A successful AAR includes the following guidelines:

(a) AARs are not critiques, but are professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner to ensure that participants openly discuss the lessons.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among O/Cs and unit personnel.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened, but also why it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Participants review the sequence of events associated with hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum, the review should address hazards that presented themselves (but were not identified) and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.

(g) Events not directly related to major events are not examined.

(h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(i) The AAR end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

**NOTE: Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circulars (TC) 25-6 and 25-20 and FM 25-101.**

**APPENDIX A - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER**

For use of the OPORD, refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure A-1.

<b>OPERATION ORDER</b>	
(classification) FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY	
Operation Order _____ 20_____	Copy ___ of ___ copies 25th Engineer Battalion
Task Organization:	
1. SITUATION.	
<p>a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. It is being reinforced with motorized rifle forces and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest INTSUM indicates that the enemy may have a platoon-size combat outpost in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.</p>	
<p>b. Friendly Forces. 1st Brigade conducts a passage of lines to seize Objective Richmond. On order, 1st Brigade continues the attack forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.</p>	
<p>(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.</p>	
<p>(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.</p>	
<p>(3) Supporting fires: 2nd Battalion, 61st Field Artillery is in direct support.</p>	
2. MISSION. The TF conducts a passage of lines and attacks to seize and secure Objective Richmond no later than 090600Z. On order, the TF prepares to continue movement forward of PL Green.	
3. EXECUTION.	
<p>a. Concept of the Operation: See the overlay developed by the trainer in the field.</p>	
<p>(1) Maneuver. TF 1-25 departs AA Red Cloud with two company teams abreast and two teams following. Team A leads on Axis Oak and is the main attack. Team B leads on Axis Pine and is supporting the attack. Teams C and D follow on Axis Oak and Pine respectively. The commander's intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the main body of the enemy so that the brigade can conduct envelopments to destroy it. It is necessary to destroy enemy combat outposts. The unit must quickly reorganize and continue movement until the unit finds the main body. The company team that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If the unit cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver with the remaining TF. The unit will continue movement to PL Green if no contact is gained. The unit will continue movement past PL Green on order.</p>	
<p>(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to Team A initially and then to the team that is in contact (once contact is made).</p>	

**Figure A-1. Sample OPORD**

(3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical checkpoints and identified obstacles are shown on the obstacle overlay.

b. Subunit Missions (as required).

c. Engineer. Priority of support is to the two lead teams. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the team in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.

d. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Report all enemy contact.

(2) Report all enemy obstacles.

(3) Report crossing of the PLs.

(4) Additional information, as required.

4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the brigade SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

b. Signal.

(1) Current SOI.

(2) Radio-listening silence until initial contact is made with the enemy.

FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY  
(classification)

**Figure A-1. Sample OPORD (continued)**

## APPENDIX B - THREAT ANALYSIS

### B-1. Introduction.

a. Dramatic changes in Europe and within the former Soviet Union have reduced the likelihood of an east-west military confrontation in Europe. The threat in Europe has not gone away completely, but it is less immediate and has changed in nature. Despite reductions, Russia will still have the largest army in Europe. Regardless of the stated peaceful intentions of current Russian political leaders, the Russian Armed Forces still possesses formidable capabilities, and those capabilities will remain, should conditions and intentions change. Other former Soviet republics are forming their own armed forces and could pose threats to each other or to other countries in the region. In this time of turmoil and uncertainty, the former Soviet military power remains a potentially dangerous challenge to US and North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) security. However, this remnant of the former Soviet threat is just one of many.

b. Many other nations are obtaining or developing sophisticated weaponry. Various regional conflicts could cause the US to intervene bilaterally or as part of a multinational coalition to protect our interests or those of our allies. Other potential conflict areas could call for a variety of responses by either the US, the former Soviet republics, or both. The threat may come in an organized military form, which may or may not follow the former Soviet model. It may also come in the form of insurgencies, terrorism, or narcotics trafficking. The US Army needs to be prepared to respond to this broad spectrum of potential threats that it could encounter in various contingencies.

B-2. Global Threats. Modern weapons and the capability to project military power to great distances beyond its own national borders would characterize a global-type threat, such as the former Soviet one. Against such a potential adversary, the threat to rear operations would include the following:

- Armored or mechanized forces breaking into the rear area.
- Airborne, airmobile, or amphibious assault forces inserted into the rear area.
- Long-range artillery, surface-to-surface missiles, or air strikes targeting rear-area assets.
- NBC weapons.
- Radio-electronic combat aimed at jamming or destroying our communications means and disrupting our C2.
- Agents and saboteurs.

B-3. Regional Threats. Regional threats, such as Iraq or North Korea, have less capability to project power. However, they may have some of the same weapons and organizations as a global threat. In fact, lessening superpower tensions are contributing significantly to the proliferation of sophisticated weaponry to emerging nations. This applies not only to conventional ground and air weapons, but also to chemical and nuclear weapons and missile systems. A mature regional power, possibly with a global power as a major source of its military hardware, emphasizes the ability to project its forces throughout a given region.

B-4. Local Threats. Local threats have even more localized objectives and little capability to project power beyond their own borders or their immediate neighbors. They generally have less modern equipment than global or regional threat powers or at least a limited variety of modern weapons. Their equipment may include modern small arms and light artillery (mortars, howitzers, and rocket launchers), but often does not include sophisticated weapons such as long-range conventional artillery or high-performance aircraft. A local threat may be heavily supported by a regional threat or even by a global power. For example, in the past, Cuba assisted Soviet-backed movements in Angola, Nicaragua, and Ethiopia. This outside influence will often be reflected in the equipment, organization, or tactics of the local threat forces. However, the actions of a local threat are often limited to insurgencies, civil wars, or

border disputes. Insurgents, especially those with outside help, may be able to purchase modern weapons, but may not have developed a logistics base able to sustain continuous conflict. Therefore, they often concentrate on guerrilla tactics, sabotage, assassinations, booby traps, or explosives to achieve their objectives.

**B-5. Special Situations.**

a. The threat in special situations includes terrorism. Terrorism may satisfy the objectives of different types of threats discussed above. Terrorists are the least likely threat to use conventional forces and thus are the hardest to anticipate or to train against. Terrorist tactics include the following:

- Assassinating or maiming.
- Arson.
- Bombing.
- Hijacking, kidnapping, or hostage taking.
- Raids and seizure of facilities.
- Sabotage.
- Hoaxes (such as bomb threats).

Terrorists may also be able to obtain weapons of mass destruction. A political leadership that supports terrorism, as in Iraq, may control such NBC weapons. If nuclear weapons are too difficult to obtain, terrorists may instead employ chemical or biological weapons.

b. Narcotics trafficking is another special-condition threat. It may be supported or tolerated by a global power for political or economic reasons. It may also be tied in with regional or local threat powers or with terrorism. There is often a marriage of convenience between insurgent groups and the drug cartels. The cartels can spend significant amounts of money on the latest in technology for communications and security to protect their operations. They can also buy weapons and otherwise finance regional insurgencies and cross-border conflicts.

**B-6. Bottom Line.** The threat to rear operations includes all of the above categories. These threat categories are not mutually exclusive and may overlap with one another.

## APPENDIX C - METRIC CONVERSION CHART

**Table C-1. Metric Conversion Chart**

<b>US Units</b>	<b>Multiplied By</b>	<b>Equals Metric Units</b>
<b>Length</b>		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.04470	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
<b>Weight</b>		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
<b>Metric Units</b>	<b>Multiplied By</b>	<b>Equals US Units</b>
<b>Length</b>		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
<b>Weight</b>		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds

**GLOSSARY**

- ?**  
status unknown; unknown
- 1LT**  
first lieutenant
- 1SG**  
first sergeant
- 5 Ss and T**  
search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag
- AA**  
avenue of approach; assembly area; antiaircraft; anchor assembly
- AAR**  
after-action review; after-action report
- ABCS**  
Army Battle Command System
- AC**  
active component; alternating current
- ADC**  
area damage control
- ADE**  
assistant division engineer
- ALCE**  
airlift control element
- AM**  
amplitude modulation
- AO**  
area of operations
- AOAP**  
Army Oil Analysis Program
- AOR**  
area of responsibility
- APC**  
armored personnel carrier
- AR**  
Army regulation; armor; angle of repose
- ARTEP**  
Army Training and Evaluation Program

**ATTN**

attention

**ATWESS**

antitank weapon effects signature simulator; Antitank Weapon Effects Simulator System

**BCOC**

base cluster operations center

**BDAR**

battle damage assessment and repair

**BDLT**

base defense liaison team

**BDOC**

base defense operations center

**BF**

battle fatigue; board feet

**BLTM**

battalion level training model

**BMO**

battalion maintenance officer

**BOMREP**

bombing report

**BOS**

battlefield operating system

**C2**

command and control

**C2SRS**

Command and Control Strength Reporting System

**CALFEX**

combined arms live-fire exercise

**CAS**

casualty; close air support

**CATS**

combined arms training strategy

**CCIR**

commander's critical-information requirement

**CCT**

combat-control team

<b>CDM</b>	chemical downwind message
<b>CFX</b>	command field exercise
<b>CHS</b>	combat health support
<b>CO</b>	commissioned officer; carbon monoxide; commanding officer; company
<b>COA</b>	course of action
<b>COMEX</b>	communications exercise
<b>COMMZ</b>	communications zone
<b>COMSEC</b>	communications security
<b>CONUS</b>	continental United States
<b>COP</b>	common operational picture
<b>CP</b>	command post; checkpoint
<b>CPT</b>	captain
<b>CPX</b>	command post exercise
<b>CSS</b>	combat service support
<b>CTA</b>	common table of allowances; consolidated training activities
<b>DA</b>	Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action
<b>DACG</b>	departure-airfield control group
<b>DC</b>	Dental Corps; District of Columbia; direct current
<b>DD</b>	Department of Defense

**DEERS**

Defense Enrollment Eligibility Reporting System

**DENTAC**

dental activity

**DMOS**

duty military occupational specialty

**DOD**

Department of Defense

**DODIC**

Department of Defense identification code

**DTSS**

Digital Topographic Support System

**DZ**

drop zone

**DZST**

drop zone support team

**EA**

each; engagement area

**EAC**

echelons above corps

**EBA**

engineer battlefield assessment

**ECCM**

electronic countercountermeasures

**EEFI**

essential elements of friendly information

**EETI**

essential elements of terrain information; essential elements of threat information

**EMO**

electronic media only

**ENDEX**

end of exercise

**EPW**

enemy prisoner of war

**ERF**

electronic remote fill; electronic countercountermeasures (ECCM) remote fill

**EW**

electronic warfare

**FBCB2**

Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below

**FH**

field hospital; frequency hopping

**FIST**

fire support team

**FM**

field manual; frequency-modulated; frequency modulation

**FO**

forward observer

**FPF**

final protective fire; final protection fires

**FPL**

final protective line

**FRAGO**

fragmentary order

**FRAGO (fragmentary order)**

An abbreviated form of an operation order (usually issued on a day-to-day basis) that eliminates the need for restating information contained in a basic operation order.

**FS**

fire support; foresight; Fort Sill

**FSC**

Finance Support Command; federal supply catalog

**FSO**

fire support officer; food service officer

**FTX**

field training exercise

**G1**

Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel)

**G2**

Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence)

**GRREG**

graves registration

**HE**

high explosive

**HHC**

headquarters and headquarters company

**HQ**

headquarters

**ICOM**

imbedded communications; Intercommunications System; integrated communications security

**INTSUM**

intelligence summary

**IPB**

intelligence preparation of the battlefield; intelligence preparation of the battlespace

**ITO**

installation transportation office(r)

**KIA**

killed in action

**LCE**

load-carrying equipment

**LD**

line of departure

**LES**

leave and earnings statement

**LNE**

late net entry

**LNO**

liaison officer

**LOI**

letter of instruction

**LRP**

land roller pedestal (used to receive launch nose in DS construction)

**LTC**

lieutenant colonel

**MACOM**

major Army command

**MAJ**

major

**MANSCEN**

Maneuver Support Center

**MAPEX**

map exercise

**MCC**

movement control center

**MCM**

materiel-change management; Manual for Courts-Martial

**MCOO**

modified combined obstacle overlay

**MCS**

Maneuver Control System

**MCSR**

materiel condition status report

**MDI**

modernized demolition initiator

**MEDDAC**

medical department activity

**METL**

mission-essential task list

**METT-TC**

mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations

**MHE**

materials-handling equipment

**MICLIC**

mine clearing line charge

**MICLIC (mine clearing line charge) M58 Series**

A rocket propelled line charge, 106.5 meters (117 yards) long that can breach a lane 8 meters (8.8 yards) wide by 100 meters (110 yards) long. The MICLIC is mounted on a standard military (M353 or M200) trailer and has a 62-meter standoff capability. Engineer units will employ the MICLIC in response to minefield breaching requirements identified by the maneuver unit.

**MIJI**

meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference

**MILES**

Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System

**MOPP**

mission-oriented protective posture

**MOPP2**

mission-oriented protective posture Level 2 (mask carried/worn, protective suit and boots worn, and gloves carried)

**MOPP4**

mission-oriented protective posture Level 4 (mask, protective suit, boots, and gloves worn)

**MORTREP**

mortar bombing report

**MOS**

military occupational specialty; minimum operating strip

**MP**

military police

**MSR**

main supply route

**MSRT**

mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal

**MTF**

medical-treatment facility

**MTP**

mission training plan; MOS training plan

**NAI**

named area of interest

**NATO**

North Atlantic Treaty Organization

**NBC**

nuclear, biological, and chemical

**NBC 1 Report**

Observer's Initial Report. This report is used by the observing unit to give basic, initial, and follow-up data about an NBC attack. This report is sent by platoons and companies to the battalion headquarters or by designated observers to the division NBC Center (NBCC).

**NBC 4 Report**

Monitoring and Survey Report. This report is used to report NBC hazards detected by a unit through monitoring, survey, or reconnaissance. This report is prepared and submitted by company-level organizations.

**NBC 5 Report**

Actual Contaminated Areas Report. Once the NBC reports are posted on the situation map, the division prepares an NBC 5 report showing the contaminated area. The preferred method of dissemination is by overlay.

**NCI**

net control interface

**NCO**

noncommissioned officer

**NCOER**

noncommissioned officer evaluation report

**NCOIC**

noncommissioned officer in charge

- NCS**  
net control station
- No.**  
number
- non-ICOM**  
nonintegrated communications security
- NPA**  
net pay advice
- NRI**  
net radio interface
- O/C**  
observer/controller
- OBJ**  
objective
- OCOKA**  
observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenue of approach
- OEG**  
operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance
- OP**  
observation post; operational procedure
- OPFOR**  
opposing forces
- OPLAN**  
operation plan
- OPORD**  
operation order
- OPORD (operation order)**  
A directive issued by a commander to subordinate commanders for the purpose of effecting the coordinated execution of a plan of action.
- OPSEC**  
operations security
- OPTEMPO**  
operational tempo; operating tempo
- OR**  
operational readiness
- P**  
needs practice; pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature

**PAC**

personnel and administration center

**pam**

pamphlet

**parapet**

A wall, rampart, or elevation of earth or stone to protect soldiers.

**PCC**

precombat check

**PCI**

photo coverage indexes; precombat inspection

**PCMS**

preventive-maintenance checks and services

**PDDE**

power-driven decontamination equipment

**PDF**

principal direction of fire

**PDS**

personnel daily summary

**PIR**

priority intelligence requirements

**PL**

phase line; plastic limit; Poland

**PLL**

prescribed load list

**PM**

provost marshal; program manager; preventive maintenance

**PMCS**

preventive-maintenance checks and services

**PMOS**

primary military occupational specialty

**POE**

port of embarkation

**POL**

petroleum, oils, and lubricants

**POM**

preparation for oversea movement; program objective memorandum

**POS/NAV**

position/navigation

<b>POV</b>	privately owned vehicle
<b>PRR</b>	personnel requirements report
<b>PS</b>	personnel strength; personnel status; pull switch
<b>PSC</b>	personnel service company
<b>PSNCO</b>	personnel staff noncommissioned officer
<b>PSR</b>	personnel status report
<b>R&amp;S</b>	reconnaissance and security; reconnaissance and surveillance
<b>radiac</b>	radiation, detection, indication, and computation
<b>RAOC</b>	rear-area operations center
<b>RATELO</b>	radiotelephone operator
<b>RC</b>	rapid cure; reserve component
<b>reg</b>	Regiment; regulation; register
<b>RES</b>	radiation exposure status
<b>ROE</b>	rules of engagement
<b>ROI</b>	rules of interaction
<b>RP</b>	Republic of Philippines; release point; rally point; reference point; red phosphorus
<b>RT</b>	radius of target; receiver/transmitter
<b>RTD</b>	return to duty

**RXMT**

retransmit

**S1**

Adjutant (US Army)

**S2**

Intelligence Officer (US Army)

**S3**

Operations and Training Officer (US Army)

**S4**

Supply Officer (US Army)

**SA**

semiannually; situational awareness

**SALUTE**

size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment

**SATS**

Standard Army Training System

**SAW**

squad automatic weapon

**SB**

supply bulletin; switchboard

**SCATMINE**

scatterable mine

**SCI**

sensitive compartmented-information

**SCPE**

simplified collective-protection equipment

**SHELREP**

shelling report

**SHTU**

simplified handheld terminal unit

**SIDPERS**

Standard Installation/Division Personnel System

**SIG**

signal

**SINGARS**

Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System

**SITEMP**

situational template

**SITMAP**

situation map

**SITREP**

situation report

**situation report (SITREP)**

A report giving the situation in the area of the reporting unit or formation.

**SJA**

Staff Judge Advocate

**SOFA**

Status of Forces Agreement

**SOI**

signal operation instructions

**SOP**

standing operating procedure

**SOP (standing operating procedure)**

A set of instructions covering those features of operations that lend themselves to a definite or standardized procedure without loss of effectiveness. The procedure is applicable unless ordered otherwise.

**SP**

start point; strongpoint; self-propelled; Spain

**SPOTREP**

spot report

**SSI**

standing signal instructions; signal supplemental instructions

**STANAG**

standardization agreement

**STB**

supertropical bleach

**STP**

soldier training publication

**STRAC**

Standards in Training Commission

**T**

trained; slab thickness; deck thickness; crown thickness; geodetic azimuth; grid azimuth; slope distance; telescope above station; time; tracked

**T&EO**

training and evaluation outline

**TA**  
terrain analysis; theater Army; training area; training aid

**TACCS**  
Tactical Army Combat Service Support (CSS) Computer System

**TACSOP**  
tactical standing operating procedure

**TAI**  
targeted area of interest; tactical area of interest

**TAMMS**  
The Army Maintenance Management System

**TC**  
technical coordinator; training circular; track commander; tank commander

**TEK**  
traffic encryption key

**TEWT**  
tactical exercise without troops

**TF**  
task force; total float

**TM**  
team; technical manual; trademark

**TMO**  
transportation movements office(r)

**TOC**  
tactical operations center

**TOE**  
table(s) of organization and equipment

**TRADOC**  
United States Army Training and Doctrine Command

**TRP**  
target reference point; traffic regulation plan

**TSEC**  
transmission security

**TSK**  
transmission security key

**U**  
unclassified; up; untrained; unlocked

**UAV**  
unmanned aerial vehicle

**UCMJ**

Uniform Code of Military Justice

**UPW**

unit proficiency work sheet

**US**

United States

**USA**

United States of America; United States Army

**USAREUR**

United States Army, Europe

**USMTF**

United States message text format

**UTM**

universal transverse Mercator

**UXO**

unexploded ordnance

**WCS**

weapon control status; weapon control station

**WESTCOM**

United States Army, Western Command

**WIA**

wounded in action

**WO**

warrant officer; warning order

**XO**

executive officer

## REFERENCES

### Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

#### Army Regulations

AR 15-6	Procedures for Investigating Officers and Boards of Officers. 11 May 1988
AR 190-47	The Army Corrections System. 15 August 1996
AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997
AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting. 30 November 2001
AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM). 15 June 1973
AR 25-50	Preparing and Managing Correspondence. 5 March 2001
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. 3 February 1995
AR 27-10	Military Justice. 6 September 2002
AR 27-20	Claims. 14 November 2002
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995
AR 600-20	Army Command Policy. 13 May 2002
AR 600-38	Meal Card Management System. 11 March 1988
AR 600-8	Military Personnel Management. 1 October 1989
AR 600-8-1	Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance. 20 October 1994
AR 600-8-14	Identification Cards for Members of the Uniformed Services, Their Family Members, and Other Eligible Personnel. 20 December 2002
AR 600-8-2	Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS). 30 October 1987
AR 600-85	Army Substance Abuse Program (ASAP). 1 October 2001
AR 600-8-8	The Total Army Sponsorship Program. 1 July 1993
AR 635-200	Enlisted Personnel. 1 November 2000
AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. 16 September 1997
AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. 1 August 1994

#### Army Training and Evaluation Program

ARTEP 5-606-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Topographic (TA). 20 April 1999
ARTEP 5-607-35-MTP	Topographic Company (EAC). To be published within 6 months.

#### Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1594	Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. 1 November 1962
DA FORM 2028	Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms. 1 February 1974

DA FORM 2166-8	Noncommissioned Officer Evaluation Report (NCOER). 1 October 2001
DA FORM 2166-8-1	NCO Counseling Checklist/Record. 1 October 2001
DA FORM 31	Request and Authority for Leave (EGA). 1 September 1993
DA FORM 3955	Change of Address and Directory Card. 1 February 1979
DA FORM 638	Recommendation for Award. 1 November 1994
DA FORM 647	Personnel Register. 1 August 1978
DA FORM 67-9	Officer Evaluation Report. 1 October 1997

#### **Department of Army Pamphlets**

DA PAM 600-8-2	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Personnel Service Center Level Procedures. 1 August 1986
DA PAM 600-8-23	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Data Base Management Procedures. 1 April 1992
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

#### **Department of Defense Publications**

DD FORM 1387-2	Special Handling Data/Certification. 1 June 1986
DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996
DOD REG 5500.7-R	Standards of Conduct. 30 August 1993

#### **Field Manuals**

FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997
FM 10-27-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations. 20 April 1993
FM 10-27-2	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations. 18 June 1991
FM 10-500-1	Airdrop Support Operations in a Theater of Operations. 19 June 1991
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000
FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994
FM 21-31	Topographic Symbols. 19 June 1961
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984
FM 22-51	Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the AirLand Battle. 15 October 1990
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI." 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990
FM 25-101	Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990
FM 3-0	Operations. 14 June 2001
FM 3-11	Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-11.11	Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-19	NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993
FM 3-19.30	Physical Security. 8 January 2001

FM 3-19.4	Military Police Leaders' Handbook. 4 March 2002
FM 3-19.40	Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001
FM 3-20.98	Reconnaissance Platoon. 2 December 2002
FM 3-21.71	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 20 August 2002
FM 3-25.26	Map Reading and Land Navigation. 20 July 2001
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992
FM 3-34.230	Topographic Operations. 3 August 2000
FM 3-4	NBC Protection. 29 May 1992
FM 34-1	Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 27 September 1994
FM 34-2	Collection Management and Synchronization Planning. 8 March 1994
FM 34-2-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance. 19 June 1991
FM 34-3	Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990
FM 34-45	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Electronic Attack. 9 June 2000
FM 34-60	Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995
FM 34-80	Brigade and Battalion Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 15 April 1986
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000
FM 3-50	Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990
FM 3-90	Tactics. 4 July 2001
FM 3-90.1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 9 December 2002
FM 4-30.3	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000
FM 44-100	US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000
FM 44-64	SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997
FM 44-8	Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996
FM 5-10	Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996
FM 5-100-15	Corps Engineer Operations. 6 June 1995
FM 5-102	Counter mobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998
FM 5-33	Terrain Analysis. 11 July 1990
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-422	Engineer Prime Power Operations. 7 May 1993
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 55-65	Strategic Deployment. 3 October 1995
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996
FM 5-71-3	Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored). 3 October 1995
FM 7-0	Training the Force. 22 October 2002
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
FM 7-22.7	The Army Noncommissioned Officer Guide. 23 December 2002
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
FM 7-92	The Infantry Reconnaissance Platoon and Squad (Airborne, Air Assault, Light Infantry). 23 December 1992

FM 8-51 Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 September 1994  
FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994  
FM 9-43-2 Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair. 3 October 1995

**Other Product Types**

CTA 50-900 Clothing and Individual Equipment. 1 September 1994  
DD FORM 457 Investigating Officer's Report. 29 August 1984  
TRADOC PAM 11-9 Blueprint of the Battlefield. 27 April 1990

**Soldier Training Publications**

STP 5-12B24-SM-TG MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Levels 2/3/4, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide. 28 March 2003  
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG MOS 62G, Quarrying Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2/3, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide. 5 May 1986

**Technical Manuals**

TM 11-5805-262-12 Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653)). 15 June 1990  
TM 11-5805-294-12 Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983

**Training Circulars**

TC 12-17 Adjutant's Call/the S1 Handbook. 17 March 1992  
TC 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988  
TC 25-20 A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews. 30 September 1993  
TC 25-6 Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training System. 3 October 1995

**Related Publications**

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

**Field Manuals**

FM 34-25 Corps Intelligence and Electronic Warfare. 30 September 1987  
FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis. 11 July 1990

### Questionnaire

MTP NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_

DATE \_\_\_\_\_

MTP TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire for your records. Mail to: Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Building 3200, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position (for example, company commander or platoon sergeant)?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. How long have you served in this position? \_\_\_\_\_

3. How long have you served in this unit? \_\_\_\_\_

4. What is your component?

- a. Active component
- b. Reserve component

5. Where is your unit?

- a. Continental United States (CONUS)
- b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
- c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
- d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
- e. Other (specify)

\_\_\_\_\_

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How do you feel that this MTP has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

- a. Has made training worse
- b. Has made training better
- c. Has had no affect on training
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion

7. How easy is the MTP to use, compared to other training products?

- a. Harder
- b. Easier
- c. About the same
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes
- c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation
- g. Do not know or do not have an opinion

8. What part of the MTP was least useful? \_\_\_\_\_

9. What part of the MTP was most useful? \_\_\_\_\_

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

11. What part of the MTP was the easiest to understand?

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

12. The training exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

- a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
- b. They help but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit training requirements.
- c. They help but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit training requirements.
- d. They help but only provide between 51 and 80 percent of my unit training requirements.
- e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STXs be added or deleted from the MTP?

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the training exercises?

- a. Have too many pages
- b. Are hard to read and understand
- c. Need more illustrations
- d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises
- e. Need more information on leader training
- f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises
- g. Need more information on support and resources
- h. Need more information on the elements that are normally attached
- i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills
- j. Do not know or do not have an opinion

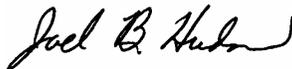


**ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP  
28 JULY 2003**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

**JOHN M. KEANE**  
General, United States Army  
Acting Chief of Staff

Official:



**JOEL B. HUDSON**  
Administrative Assistant to the  
Secretary of the Army  
0319705

DISTRIBUTION:

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve:* Not to be distributed.  
Electronic Means Only.

**PIN: 080948-000**